

來!

學華語 3

第三冊

Let's Learn Mandarin

課本 Textbook



來!

學華語 3

第三冊

Let's Learn Mandarin

課本 Textbook



華語熱是當前國際社會語言學習新興現象，全球各地學習需求日益殷切，學習人數不斷攀升，特別是長期投注華語教學的海外僑校也掌握華語學習需求熱潮，參與非華裔社群的華語教學工作，朝與主流接軌的方向發展。在僑教發展的基礎上，為推展海外華語文教育，並因應全球華語文教學趨勢變化以及華語學習環境改變等情勢，本會特別邀集專業編撰團隊，以外國語言教學概念，開發適合海外各行各業成人華語文能力零起點人士學習之華語教材，期透過自然對話的方式，學習日常生活所需之應對詞彙，以奠定華語文的基礎，並為日後學習進階華文作準備。

本會多年來於海外推動僑民教育及華語文學習不遺餘力，企盼本書不僅能提升華語文教學技巧與內涵，展現正體字華語文優質、多元及豐富特色，也能推展臺灣華語文的市場。

僑務委員會





The Huayu (Mandarin) fever is an emerging phenomenon in current international society. The demand for learning and the number of learners are increasing all the time all over the world. Overseas compatriot schools have long been involved in Mandarin teaching and, abreast of the burgeoning demand for learning Mandarin, have begun to develop in the direction of aligning with the mainstream. To promote overseas Mandarin learning and respond to changes in global Mandarin teaching trends and changes in the Mandarin learning environment, the Overseas Community Affairs Council (OCAC) assembled a professional writing team and developed language teaching materials suitable for adults in all walks of life, following the foreign language teaching concept developed by integrated Mandarin teaching professionals of the National Academy for Education Research. It is hoped that through the learning of natural dialogue and vocabulary needed in daily life, their foundation of Mandarin will be consolidated to prepare for advanced study of Mandarin in future.

The OCAC has tirelessly promoted overseas compatriot education and Mandarin learning for many years. It is hoped that this textbook will not only raise the level and depth of Mandarin teaching but also expand the market and showcase the excellent, diverse, and rich characteristics of Taiwan's traditional characters.

Overseas Community Affairs Council (OCAC)

一、編輯理念

1. 以一般社會人士為教學對象，主題及情境都針對海外成人學習者。
2. 以成人基本的日常生活、工作情境為取材範圍，著重實用性與功能性，以學習後能用、會用為目標。
3. 以國家教育研究院制定的「臺灣華語文能力基準（TBCL）」詞語及語法點分級標準為編寫依據。
4. 課文對話、詞彙、語法都依成人學習者的學習環境及能力，定量並排序。
5. 注重聽、說、讀、寫四技平衡發展，採任務型活動來提升聽說能力。
6. 作業本練習方式多元，並強調聽力練習以補足海外缺少聽說環境的情況。
7. 文化單元銜接課文主題，使學習者透過學習語言進一步了解文化。

二、教材架構

1. 課本：本冊共十課，為《來！學華語》系列套書第三冊。
 - 1-1 課文：採對話方式，以正體字為主，搭配注音符號與漢語拼音。英文課文附錄於後。
 - 1-2 生詞：標示注音符號及漢語拼音、詞性及英文翻譯。依據國教院（TBCL）語詞分級。第三冊以第二、三、四級詞語為主，共 292 個生詞。
 - 1-3 語法：以國教院（TBCL）第二、三級語法條為主，共 40 條語法。
 - 1-4 課堂綜合活動：每課均包括字詞認讀與書寫、聽說讀寫之任務活動，約 4-5 個項目。
 - 1-5 文化單元：安排三篇與語言相關的華人文化。第三冊第一單元是「華人的日曆」，置於第三課後。第二單元是「臺灣茶」，置於第六課後。第三單元是「華人的稱呼」，置於第十課後。
 - 1-6 課室用語列於前，詞彙索引附錄於後。
2. 作業本：本冊共十課。
 - 2-1 每課均包括聽力練習 4 項，本冊有聽寫生詞、辨別語詞、聽懂句子、聽懂短文並能正確回應。
 - 2-2 在閱讀理解方面有課文內容理解、看圖釋義、生詞填空、短文理解等。
 - 2-3 在書寫方面有漢字習寫與翻譯。

三、其他資源

1. 教師手冊：包含教學指引、課本練習解答、作業本解答、聽力文本、測驗卷一份、其他資源連結等。
2. 課文對話、生詞、作業本的錄音檔案。



I. Overview

1. *Let's Learn Mandarin* is designed to assist instruction of members of the general population in learning Chinese as a foreign language. Its topics and settings aim to help adult learners develop communicative competence.
2. The subjects of each lesson are drawn from daily life, with a focus on practical and functional aspects. The goal is to enable learners to attain the skills and capabilities that they can apply in basic life situations.
3. Gradation of vocabulary and syntax items presented in *Let's Learn Mandarin* is based on the “Taiwan Benchmarks for the Chinese Language” (TBCL) developed by the National Academy for Educational Research.
4. Vocabulary and grammar items, as well as dialogues, are introduced in measured amounts and sequences according to the learning environment and capabilities of adult learners.
5. *Let's Learn Mandarin* features balanced development of listening, speaking, reading, and writing skills. Its task-based activities help enhance the learner’s listening and speaking capabilities.
6. The accompanying Workbook presents a diverse array of exercises to reinforce what has been learned in the Textbook. Its focus on listening comprehension exercises helps ameliorate the dearth of practical situations overseas to practice listening and speaking.
7. “Culture Notes” sections introduce or amplify some of the social practices or cultural concepts that underly lesson content with background information that helps adult learners gain deeper insight into Chinese culture via language learning.

II. Features of the “*Let's Learn Mandarin*” Series

1. Textbooks: Volume 3 contains 10 lessons.
 - 1.1 Text: The dialogue of each lesson is displayed in Traditional characters, Mandarin Phonetic Symbols and Hanyu Pinyin with tone markings. English translations and Simplified character versions of each dialogue are provided in the appendix of each volume.
 - 1.2 Vocabulary: Each vocabulary item is presented in Traditional Chinese characters, Mandarin Phonetic Symbols and Hanyu Pinyin with tone markings, part of speech, and English translation. Volume 3 presents 290 words in all, primarily from TBCL Level 2, Level 3 and Level 4.
 - 1.3 Grammar: Volume 3 presents a total of 40 grammar items primarily from TBCL Level 2 and Level 3.
 - 1.4 Classroom activities: Each lesson includes four to five task-based activities involving character recognition, character writing, listening, speaking, reading and writing.
 - 1.5 Culture Notes: Volume 3 features three Chinese culture notes pertaining to language. The first, on “The Lunar Calendar,” appears after Lesson 3; the second, on “Taiwan tea,” appears after Lesson 6; and the third, on “Appellations” appears after Lesson 10.
 - 1.6 Classroom Expressions appear in the front material, while a glossary is placed in the back.
2. Workbook: The Volume 3 Workbook comprises 10 lessons.
 - 2-1 Each lesson includes four listening comprehension exercises: new vocabulary recognition and writing, word identification, sentence listening comprehension, short phrase listening comprehension and capability to respond correctly.
 - 2-2 Reading comprehension drills are provided for text comprehension, capability to paraphrase an illustration, filling in word blanks in sentences and passage comprehension.
 - 2-3 Writing exercises are provided for character writing, translating and paragraph writing.

III. Supplemental Resources

1. Teacher’s Manual: includes teaching guide, answer key for textbook exercises and workbook, scripts for listening tasks, quizzes, and resources links.
2. The audio recordings include lesson dialogues, vocabulary items, and Workbook listening comprehension exercises.

目次

Contents

序 言	Foreword.....	II
編者的話	Editor's Note.....	IV
人物介紹	Introduction to Characters.....	VIII
課堂用語	Classroom Expressions	IX
詞類略表	Abbreviations of Grammatical Terms.....	X

第一課	歡迎新同學	
Lesson 1	Welcoming a New Classmate.....	1

第二課	海邊的風景很漂亮	
Lesson 2	The Seaside Scenery Is Beautiful.....	17

第三課	感恩節	
Lesson 3	Thanksgiving Holiday	33

文化單元（一）	華人的日曆	
Culture Notes	The Lunar Calendar	48

第四課	公司派我到這裡工作	
Lesson 4	The Company Sent Me to Work Here	51

第五課	烏龍茶很香	
Lesson 5	Oolong Tea Is Very Aromatic	69

第六課	同事對我很好	
Lesson 6	My Colleagues Are Very Good to Me	85



文化單元（二） 臺灣茶

Culture Notes	Taiwan Tea	102
---------------	------------------	-----

第七課 我去歐洲出差

Lesson 7	I Am Going to Europe on Business	105
----------	--	-----

第八課 我做錯事了

Lesson 8	I Made a Mistake	121
----------	------------------------	-----

第九課 週末的活動

Lesson 9	Weekend Activities	137
----------	--------------------------	-----

第十課 我的華語進步了

Lesson 10	My Mandarin Is Improving	155
-----------	--------------------------------	-----

文化單元（三） 華人的稱呼

Culture Notes	Appellations	174
---------------	--------------------	-----

附錄 Appendix

英文課文	Text in English	177
------	-----------------------	-----

簡體字課文	Text in Simplified Characters	184
-------	-------------------------------------	-----

生詞索引	Vocabulary Index	189
------	------------------------	-----

語音系統表	Phonetic System	202
-------	-----------------------	-----

Introduction to Characters

王明文 *Wang Mingwen*



Born and raised in Taiwan

Mingwen returned to Taiwan and worked for a while after completing graduate school in the United States. Now his company has sent him to work in the U.S.

高莉亞 *Gloria Lee*



Born and raised in the United States

Gloria works in a mobile phones company. She is interested in learning Mandarin and has studied it for two years. She often chats with Mingwen to practice her Mandarin.

麗莎 *Lisa*



Born and raised in the United States

Lisa is Gloria's sweet and warmhearted coworker.

何希 *José*



Born and raised in the United States

José is Gloria's husband. He likes swimming and playing video games; but really enjoys cooking most of all.

張家安 *Joann Zhang*



Born and raised in the United States

Joann Zhang is of Chinese ethnic heritage, works at a trading company and likes photography. She and Gloria are both taking Mandarin class. Joann has studied Mandarin for more than two years.

杜翔 *Dushyant*



Born and raised in India

Dushyant works in the United States at an Internet company. He likes taking Mandarin class and works very hard at learning Mandarin.



1. Nǐ hǎo!	你好	How do you do? Hello!
2. Dàjiā hǎo!	大家好	Hello, everyone.
3. Nǐmen hǎo!	你們好	Hello, everyone.
4. Lǎoshī hǎo!	老師好	Hello, Teacher.
5. Kāishǐ shàng kè.	開始上課	Let's begin the class.
6. Qǐng gēn wǒ niàn.	請跟我念	Please repeat after me.
7. Qǐng nǐ niàn.	請你念	Please read aloud.
8. Qǐng nǐ shuō.	請你說	Please say it.
9. Qǐng kàn dì ____ yè.	請看第____頁	Please see page ____.
10. Dàjiā yìqǐ shuō.	大家一起說	Everybody says it together.
11. Wǒ bù dǒng.	我不懂	I don't understand.
12. Yǒu wèntí ma?	有問題嗎?	Any questions?
13. Wǒ yǒu wèntí.	我有問題	I have a question / questions.
14. Qǐng jǔ shǒu.	請舉手	Please raise your hands.
15. Xià kè.	下課	Class is dismissed.
16. Xièxie!	謝謝	Thanks. Thank you.
17. Bú kèqì.	不客氣	You are welcome. No problem.
18. Zhè shì shénme?	這是什麼?	What is this?
19. Qǐng zài shuō yí biàn.	請再說一遍	Please say it again.
20. Zàijiàn!	再見	Good-bye! See you.

Abbreviations of Grammatical Terms

Symbols	Parts of speech	詞類	Examples
Adv	Adverb	副詞	也、都
Conj	Conjunction	連接詞	和、可是
Det	Determiner	限定詞	這、那
M	Measure	量詞	個、雙
N	Noun	名詞	學生、公司
Num	Numeral	數詞	一、二
Pron	Pronoun	代名詞	你 / 妳、他 / 她
Ptc	Particle	助詞	嗎、呢
Prep	Preposition	介詞	在、給
QPr	Question Pronoun	疑問代詞	什麼、哪裡
V	Verb	動詞	叫、吃
Vs	State Verb	狀態動詞	忙、好
Vaux	Auxiliary Verb	助動詞	想、會



Lesson

01

歡迎新同學

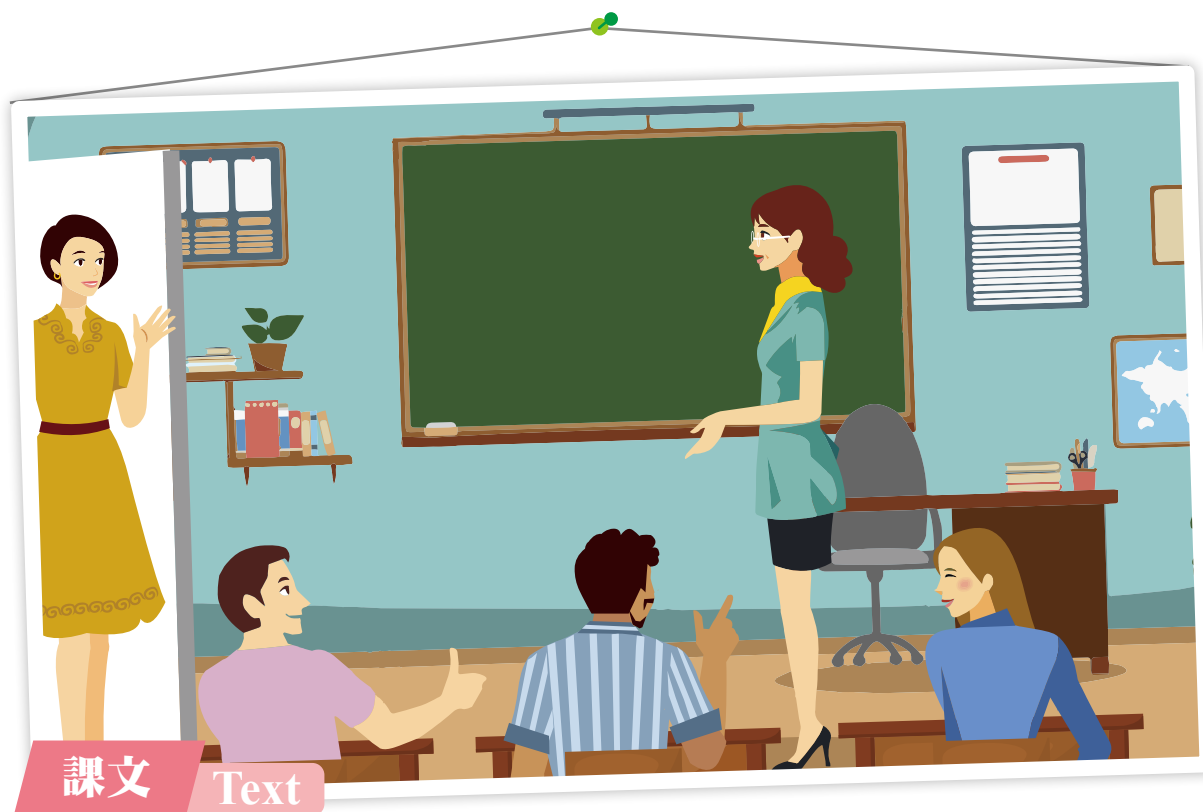
Welcoming a New Classmate

Learning Objectives

Topic: Introducing oneself

By the end of this lesson, you will be able to use Mandarin to

1. Ask others about people, things and events.
2. Describe how you lived during a certain period of time.
3. Introduce your name and your job.
4. Describe your interest (hobby).



課文

Text

(學期的第一天)



大家好，今天這是個學期的第一天。
Dàjiā hǎo, jīntiān shì zhè ge xuéqí de dì-yī tiān.



林老師，好久不見。
Lín lǎoshī, hǎojiǔ bújiàn.



你們夏天什麼時候做了什麼？
Nǐmen xiàtiān de shíhòu zuòle shénme?



我跟先生去墨西哥度假了，玩得非常高興。
Wǒ gēn xiānshēng qù Mòxīgē dùjià le, wán de fēicháng gāoxìng.



我們公司夏天時候最忙，我差不多每個星期都加班。
Wǒmen gōngsī xiàtiān de shíhòu zuì máng, wǒ chàbùduō měi ge xīngqī dōu jiābān.



你好辛苦啊！
Nǐ hǎo xīnkǔ a!

(有人敲门) (Someone knocks on the door.)



请问，这是102教室吗？
Qǐngwèn, zhè shì 102 jiàoshì ma?



是，请进。你有什么事？
Shì, qǐng jìn. Nǐ yǒu shénme shì?



我来上中文课。请问您是林老师吗？
Wǒ lái shàng Zhōngwén kè. Qǐngwèn nín shì Lín lǎoshī ma?



我就是林老师。欢迎欢迎。妳以前
Wǒ jiù shì Lín lǎoshī. Huānyíng huānyíng. Nǐ yǐqián

学过中文吗？
xuéguò Zhōngwén ma?



我以前学了两年多。上个月我换
Wǒ yǐqián xuéle liǎng nián duō. Shàng ge yuè wǒ huàn

工作，从东部搬到这里。我想继续
gōngzuò, cóng dōngbù bāndào zhèlǐ. Wǒ xiǎng jìxù

学中文。
xué Zhōngwén.



请你介绍一下自己吧？
Qǐng nǐ jièshào yíxià zìjǐ ba?



大家好，我姓张，名字叫家安。家人
Dàjiā hǎo, wǒ xìng Zhāng, míngzi jiào Jiā'ān. Jiārén

的「家」，平安的「安」。我在贸易
de "jiā", píng'ān de "ān". Wǒ zài mào yì

公司工作。我的兴趣爱好是照相，收集了
gōngsī gōngzuò. Wǒ de xìngqù shì zhào xiàng, shōujíle

很多鸟和猫的照片。
hěn duō niǎo hàn māo de zhàopiàn.





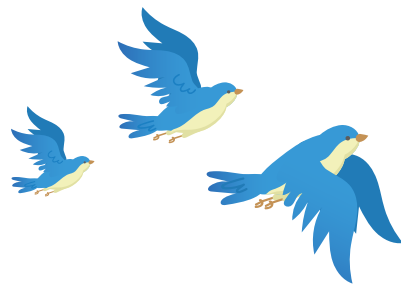
張家安，很高興認識妳。我叫高莉亞，
Zhāng Jiā'ān, hěn gāoxìng rènshì nǐ. Wǒ jiào Gāo Lìyǎ,

在賣手機的公司工作。
zài mài shǒujī de gōngsī gōngzuò.



非常歡迎新同學。現在我們開始
Fēicháng huānyíng xīn tóngxué. Xiànzài wǒmen kāishǐ

上課吧。
shàngkè ba.



生詞

Vocabulary

1. 同學	tóngxué	N	classmate
2. 大家	dàjiā	N	everyone
3. 學期	xuéqí	N	academic term
4. 第	dì	Det	[Ordinal prefix]
5. 度假	dùjià	V	vacation
6. 加班	jiābān	V	work overtime
7. 好	hǎo	Adv	really, quite
8. 辛苦	xīnkǔ	Vs	do something arduous
9. 啊	a	Ptc	[exclamatory particle]
10. 教室	jiàoshì	N	classroom
11. 事	shì	N	something (meaning an event or matter)
12. 就	jiù	Adv	indeed, in fact

13. 以 ^{ㄧˇ} 前 ^{ㄑㄧㄢˊ}	yǐqián	N	before, previously
14. 換 ^{ㄏㄨㄢˋ}	huàn	V	change, switch
15. 東 ^{ㄉㄨㄥ} 部 ^{ㄅㄨˋ}	dōngbù	N	east (part of a territory)
16. 繼 ^{ㄐㄧˋ} 續 ^{ㄒㄩˊ}	jìxù	V/Adv	continue
17. 平 ^{ㄆㄧㄥˊ} 安 ^{ㄞㄢ}	píng'ān	Vs	safe, at peace
18. 貿 ^{ㄇㄠˋ} 易 ^{ㄧˋ}	màoyì	N	trade (nation to nation)
19. 興 ^{ㄒㄩㄥ} 趣 ^{ㄑㄩˋ}	xìngqù	N	interest (hobby)
20. 收 ^{ㄕㄨ} 集 ^{ㄐㄧˊ}	shōují	V	collect
21. 鳥 ^{ㄋㄧㄠˇ}	niǎo	N	bird
22. 貓 ^{ㄇㄠ}	māo	N	cat
23. 照 ^{ㄓào} 片 ^{ㄆㄧㄢˋ}	zhàopiàn	N	photograph

短語

Phrases

24. 敲 ^{ㄑㄠ} 門 ^{ㄇㄣˊ}	qiāo mén	knock on a door
25. 照 ^{ㄓào} 相 ^{ㄒㄩㄥˊ}	zhào xiàng	photography

專有名詞

Proper Nouns

26. 林 ^{ㄌㄧㄣˊ}	Lín	an example of a surname
27. 墨 ^{ㄇㄛˋ} 西 ^{ㄒㄧ} 哥 ^{ㄍㄜ}	Mòxīgē	Mexico
28. 張 ^{ㄓāng} 家 ^{ㄐㄧㄚ} 安 ^{ㄞㄢ}	Zhāng Jiā'ān	Joann Zhang



語法 Grammar

1 Ordinal Numbers 第 dì

Adding “第 dì” before an integer (cardinal number) indicates ordinality or sequentiality. The word after the number is a measure word or a noun.

Examples:

- (1) 今天是上課的第一天。

Today is the first day of class.

- (2) 三月是一年的第三個月。

March is the third month of the year.

Occasionally, adding “第 dì” is not necessary, as in designating the “first floor” (ground floor) of a building.

Example:

百貨公司在一樓，咖啡店在二樓。

The department store is on the first floor, a coffee shop is on the second floor.

- (1) 這個星期是五月的第三個星期。

Zhè ge xīngqī shì wǔ yuè de dì-sān ge xīngqī.

This week is the third week of May.

- (2) 第二件衣服比第一件便宜。

Dì-èr jiàn yīfú bǐ dì-yī jiàn piányí.

The second article of clothing is cheaper than the first one.

- (3) 高莉亞是今天第一個到公司的人。

Gāo Lìyǎ shì jīntiān dì-yī ge dào gōngsī de rén.

Gloria was the first person to arrive at the company today.

- (4) 他喝了一杯咖啡，又喝了第二杯。

Tā hēle yì bēi kāfēi, yòu hēle dì-èr bēi.

He drank a cup of coffee, and then drank a second cup.



Exercise

Look at the picture, then use “第 *dì*” in answering the following questions.

1



A：第二天是幾號？



_____。

2



A：哪雙運動鞋最貴？



_____。

3



A：六月一號是她上班第幾天？



_____。

4



A：感恩節（*Gǎn'ēn jié*,
Thanksgiving Day）
是第幾個星期四？



_____。



Lesson 01 歡迎新同學

5



A: 他喝的第一杯飲料是什麼？



_____。

2

就 jiù indeed/in fact/precisely

“就 jiù” indicates an affirmative tone and emphasizes the person or situation that follows it.

Examples:

(1) A: 喂，請問高莉亞在嗎？

Hello, may I ask, is Gloria there?

B: 你好，我就是高莉亞。

Hello, this is [indeed] Gloria.

(2) 這裡就是電腦公司。

This is [in fact] the computer company.

(1) A: 那位先生是張先生嗎？

Nà wèi xiānshēng shì Zhāng xiānshēng ma?

Is that gentleman Mr. Zhang?

B: 是，他就是張先生。

Shì, tā jiù shì Zhāng xiānshēng.

Yes, he is indeed Mr. Zhang.

(2) 穿白衣服的小姐就是麗莎。

Chuān bái yīfú de xiǎojiě jiù shì Lìshā.

The young lady wearing white clothing is indeed Lisa.

(3) A: 高莉亞的家在公園附近嗎？

Gāo Lìyǎ de jiā zài gōngyuán fùjìn ma?

Is Gloria's home near the park?

B: 是，她家就在公園附近。

Shì, tā jiā jiù zài gōngyuán fùjìn.

Yes, her home is indeed near the park.



(4) A : 請問賣手機的店在哪裡？

Qǐngwèn mài shǒujī de diàn zài nǎlǐ?

May I ask, where is a store that sells mobile phones?

B : 就在對面。

Jiù zài duìmiàn.

It is [in fact] just across the way.



Exercise

Use “就 *jiù*” to answer the following questions.

1



: 喂，請問您是張家安小姐嗎？



: _____。

2



: 請問那位老師是王老師嗎？



: _____。

3



: 妳昨天買的裙子是這一件嗎？



: _____。

4



: 你現在在哪裡？在帶狗散步嗎？



: 是，我_____。



Lesson 01 歡迎新同學

5



：我的長褲在哪裡？



：你的長褲_____。

3

以前 yǐqián / 以後 yǐhòu before (previously)/ after (subsequently)

There are two ways to use “以前 yǐqián / 以後 yǐhòu.” In this lesson, “以前 yǐqián” refers to some situation that happened previously (Example 1), or signifies that the current situation did not exist previously (Example 2). “以後 yǐhòu” signifies that some other situation might occur after a situation that has just happened (Example 3). In Book 1, Lesson 7 of this series, “以後 yǐhòu” was mastered as indicating that a second event occurred after the event preceding its use (Example 4), and “以前 yǐqián” as indicating that a second event had to be completed before the first event could occur (Example 5).

Examples:

(1) 我以前學過中文。(B3,L1)

I have [previously] studied Mandarin.

(2) 我現在會說中文了，以前我不會說。(B3,L1)

I can speak Mandarin now, previously I could not.

(3) 我會說中文了，以後我要去臺灣玩。(B3,L1)

Once I can speak Mandarin, I will [subsequently] go to Taiwan for fun.

(4) 她回來以後，請她給我打電話。(B1,L7)

After she returns, please ask her to give me a phone call.

(5) 上班以前，我要先洗澡。(B2,L9)

Before I go to work, I must first bathe.

(1) 我以前沒吃過牛肉麵。

Wǒ yǐqián méi chīguò niúròu miàn.

I have not eaten beef noodles before.

(2) 我希望以後有機會去日本旅行。

Wǒ xīwàng yǐhòu yǒu jīhuì qù Rìběn lǚxíng.

I hope [afterward] to have the opportunity to go to Japan and travel.

(3) A：你要不要跟我一起去度假？

Nǐ yào bú yào gēn wǒ yìqǐ qù dùjià?

Do you want to go with me on vacation?

B：我在寫論文，以後再跟你去吧。

Wǒ zài xiě lùnwén, yǐhòu zài gēn nǐ qù ba.

I am writing my thesis now, perhaps I'll go with you later on.



TRAVEL JAPAN

(4) A：你現在覺得做飯很有意思吧？

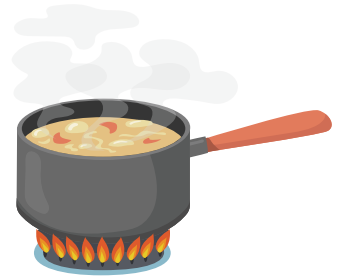
Nǐ xiànzài juéde zuò fàn hěn yǒuyìsi ba?

Could it be you now find cooking interesting?

B：是啊！可是我以前不喜歡做飯。

Shì a! Kěshì wǒ yǐqián bù xǐhuān zuò fàn.

Yes, indeed! But before I wasn't fond of cooking.



Exercise

Fill in the blanks of the following sentences with either “以前 *yǐqián*” or “以後 *yǐhòu*” as appropriate.

- 1 爸爸_____不喜歡做飯，現在常常去超級市場買菜。
- 2 麗莎現在天天去跑步，_____她不喜歡運動。
- 3 這家餐廳的牛肉麵很好吃，_____我還要來吃。
- 4 你_____想去亞洲旅行嗎？
- 5 我今天第一天學中文，我_____沒學過。
- 6 你們_____認識嗎？

4

Numeral + Measure + 多 *duō*

Exceeding to some extent the amount signified by the numeral.

Use of “多 *duō*” after a numeral + measure word indicates an amount in excess of the numeral amount to an extent limited by the implied unit step of the measure word (Example 1) or the unit step of the numeral (Example 2).

Examples:

(1) numeral + measure + 多 (+noun)

兩年多。(2年~3年)

Two years plus (i.e., more than 2 years, but less than 3).

五塊多(錢)。(5塊錢~6塊錢)

Five dollars and change (i.e., between 5 and 6 dollars).

她去年在那裡住了三個多月。(3個月~4個月)

She lived there for over three months last year (i.e., between 3 and 4 months).



Lesson 01 歡迎新同學

(2) numeral + 多 + measure + noun

二十多塊錢。(21 ~ 29 塊錢)

Twenty-plus dollars (i.e., between 21 and 29 dollars).

學校有一百多個學生。(101 ~ 199 個)

The school has more than 100 students (i.e., between 101 and 199 students).

從這裡到那裡開車三十多分鐘。(31 ~ 39 分鐘)

It takes over thirty minutes to drive from here to there (i.e., 31 to 39 minutes).

(1) 王明文念書的時候，在美國住了三年多。

Wáng Míngwén niànshū de shíhòu, zài Měiguó zhùle sān nián duō.

Wang Mingwen lived in the U.S. for more than three years while he was in school.

(2) 因為要請朋友吃飯，他準備了一個多星期。

Yīnwèi yào qǐng péngyǒu chīfàn, tā zhǔnbèile yí ge duō xīngqī.

He wanted to invite friends for a meal, so he prepared for over a week.

(3) 雖然這件外套五百多塊錢，可是樣子真好看。

Suīrán zhè jiàn wàitào wǔbǎi duō kuài qián, kěshì yàngzi zhēn hǎokàn.

Although this overcoat cost over 500 dollars, it is really good looking.

(4) 那個城市每年有一百多天會下雨。

Nà ge chéngshì měi nián yǒu yībǎi duō tiān huì xià yǔ.

That city has over 100 days of rainfall each year.

Exercise

Correctly reorder the words in the following sentences.

① 我搬到南區 ①兩 ②多 ③年 了。

➡ 我搬到南區_____了。

② 爸爸說他打算休假 ①一 ②星期 ③個 ④多。

➡ 爸爸說他打算休假_____。

③ 高莉亞練習寫字，①一 ②練習了 ③小時 ④個 ⑤多。

➡ 高莉亞練習寫字，_____。

④ 這盒巧克力賣 ①三十 ②塊 ③錢 ④多，不貴。

➡ 這盒巧克力賣 _____，不貴。

⑤ 我們公司 ①五 ②多 ③百 ④有 ⑤個 工作的人。

➡ 我們公司 _____ 工作的人。

綜合活動 Classroom Activities

1. Read aloud

（學期的第一天）

林老師：大家好，今天是這個學期的第一天。

高莉亞：林老師，好久不見。

林老師：你們夏天的時候做了什麼？

高莉亞：我跟先生去墨西哥度假了，玩得非常高興。

杜 翔：我們公司夏天的時候最忙，我差不多每個星期都加班。

高莉亞：你好辛苦啊！

（有人敲門）

張家安：請問，這是 102 教室嗎？

林老師：是，請進。妳有什麼事？

張家安：我來上中文課。請問您是林老師嗎？

林老師：我就是林老師。歡迎歡迎。妳以前學過中文嗎？

張家安：我以前學了兩年多。上個月我換工作，從東部搬到這裡。我想繼續學中文。

林老師：請妳介紹一下自己吧？

張家安：大家好，我姓張，名字叫家安。家人的「家」，平安的「安」。

我在貿易公司工作。我的興趣是照相，收集了很多鳥和貓的照片。

高莉亞：張家安，很高興認識妳。我叫高莉亞，在賣手機的公司工作。

林老師：非常歡迎新同學。現在我們開始上課吧。





Lesson 01 歡迎新同學

2. Fill in the blanks

Based on the preceding dialogue, fill in the missing words of each sentence with the appropriate characters or pinyin.

林老師：_____好，今天是這個_____的_____一天。

高莉亞：林老師，_____。

林老師：你們夏天的_____做了什麼？

高莉亞：我跟先生去墨西哥_____了，玩得非常高興。

杜 翔：我們公司夏天的時候最忙，我差不多每個星期都_____。

高莉亞：你好_____！

張家安：請問，這是 102_____嗎？

林老師：是，請進。妳有什麼_____？

張家安：我來_____中文課。請問您是林老師嗎？

林老師：我_____林老師。歡迎歡迎。妳_____學過中文嗎？

張家安：我以前學了_____。上個月我_____工作，
從_____搬到這裡。我想繼續學中文。

林老師：請妳_____一下自己吧？

張家安：大家好，我姓_____，名字叫家安。家人的「家」，平安的
「安」。我在_____公司工作。我的_____是
照相，_____了很多_____和貓的_____片。

高莉亞：張家安，很高興_____妳。我叫高莉亞，在賣手機的
公司工作。

林老師：非常歡迎新_____。現在我們_____上課吧。



3. Ask others and fill in the table: Use the following questions to ask two classmates, then fill in the table with their answers.

- (1) 請問你叫什麼名字？
- (2) 請問你是哪國人？
- (3) 請問你在哪裡工作？那是你的第一個工作嗎？
- (4) 你以前學過中文嗎？學過多久？
- (5) 你的興趣是什麼？你喜歡收集什麼？

姓名	哪國人	工作	學中文	興趣 / 收集



4. Introducing oneself: Ask everyone to introduce themselves.

大家好，我叫_____，我是_____人。現在，我在_____工作，我在這裡已經工作了_____年。我的工作很_____（忙 / 累 / 多 / 有意思）。

我的興趣是_____，有空的時候我會_____。我喜歡收集_____。

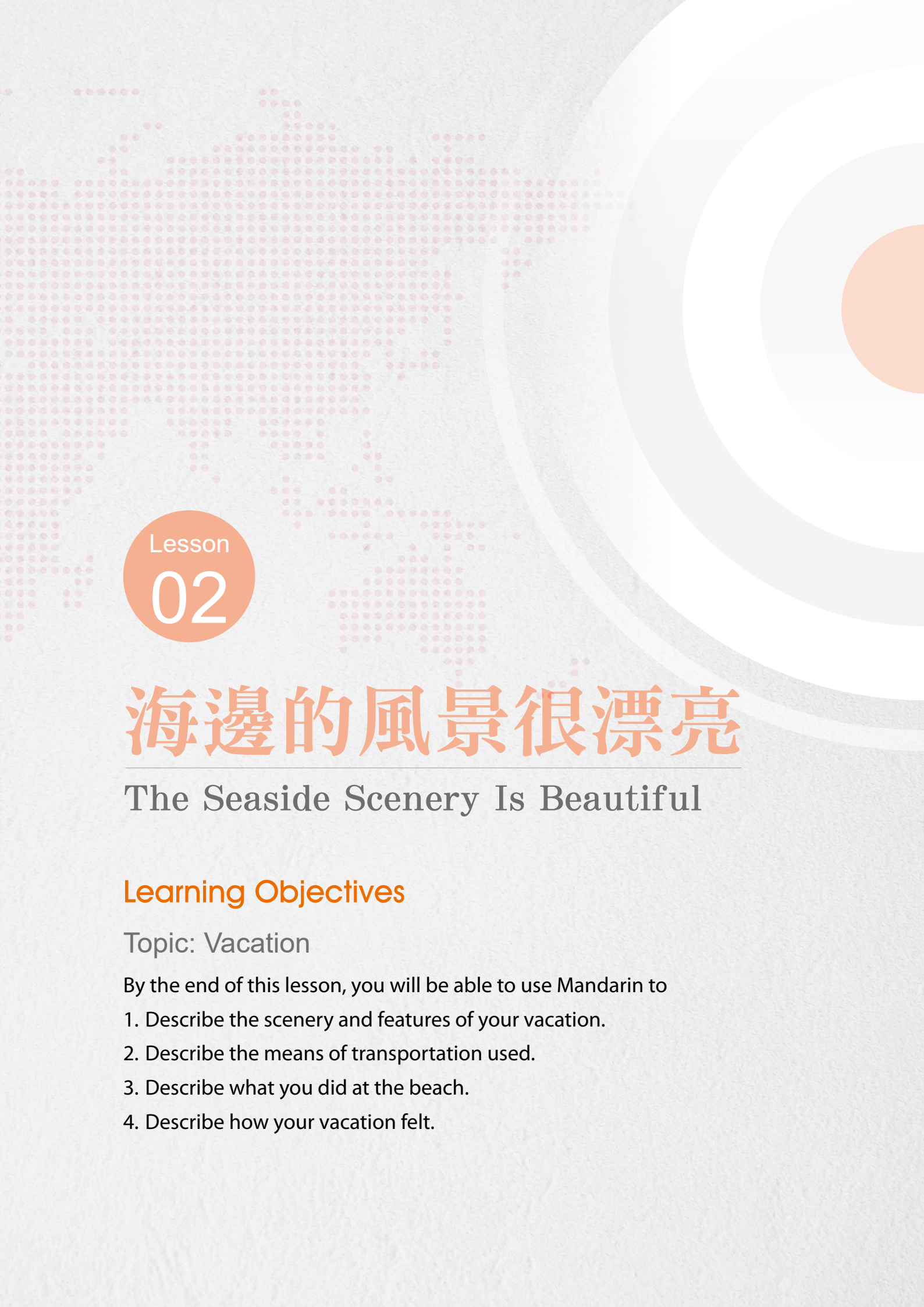
很高興跟大家一起學中文。

5. Look at the two business cards, then answer the questions below.



- (1) If your company wanted to import foreign-made products, whom would you contact?
- (2) At what company does Dushyant work?





Lesson

02

海邊的風景很漂亮

The Seaside Scenery Is Beautiful

Learning Objectives

Topic: Vacation

By the end of this lesson, you will be able to use Mandarin to

1. Describe the scenery and features of your vacation.
2. Describe the means of transportation used.
3. Describe what you did at the beach.
4. Describe how your vacation felt.



課文

Text



聽說妳又去度假了。妳的假期
Tīngshuō nǐ yòu qù dùjià le. Nǐ de jiàqī

怎麼樣?
zěnmeyàng?



這次度假又好玩又輕鬆。
Zhè cì dùjià yòu hǎowán yòu qīngsōng.



你們在那裡做了什麼?
Nǐmen zài nǎlǐ zuòle shéme.



我們天天去游泳，有一天還坐船去
Wǒmen tiāntiān qù yóuyǒng, yǒuyìtiān hái zuò chuán qù
學潛水，看到了海裡各種顏色的魚。
xué qiánshuǐ, kàndào le hǎi lǐ gè zhǒng yánsè de yú.

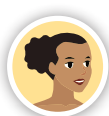


聽起來很有意思。潛水很難嗎?
Tīng qǐlái hěn yǒuyìsi. Qiánshuǐ hěn nán ma?



不容易，但是教練教得很好，我很快
Bù róngyì, dànshì jiàoliàn jiāo de hěn hǎo, wǒ hěn kuài

就會了。
jiù huì le.



上个周末是假期，海边的人很多吧？
Shàng ge zhōumò shì jiàqī, hǎi biān de rén hěn duō ba?



海边到处是我们这里冬天
的时候，大家都不想去看海边晒太阳。
Hǎi biān dào chù dōu shì rén. Wǒmen zhèlǐ dōngtiān de
shíhòu, dàjiā dōu xiǎng qù hǎi biān shài tàiyáng.



你们住的旅馆怎么样？
Nǐmen zhù de lǚguǎn zěnmeyàng?



我们住的旅馆离海边很近，在旅馆
就可以看见海边，风景很漂亮。
Wǒmen zhù de lǚguǎn lí hǎi biān hěn jìn, zài lǚguǎn
jiù kěyǐ kàndào hǎi biān, fēngjǐng hěn piàoliàng.



我想晚上也很美。
Wǒ xiǎng wǎnshàng yě hěn měi.



是啊！我们在海边，一边散步，一边
看天上的星星，心情很轻松。
Shì a! wǒmen zài hǎi biān, yìbiān sànbù, yìbiān
kàn tiānshàng de xīngxīng, xīnqíng hěn qīngsōng.



你们是怎么去的？
Nǐmen shì zěnmeyàng qù de?



我们是搭飞机去的，到了那里再租
车去旅馆，很方便。
Wǒmen shì dā fēijī qù de, dào le nàlǐ zài zū
chē qù lǚguǎn, hěn fāngbiàn.



我决定下个假期也去那里度假。
Wǒ juéding xià ge jiàqī yě qù nàlǐ dùjià.





Lesson 02 海邊的風景很漂亮

生詞

Vocabulary

1. 海 ^{ㄇㄞˇ} 邊 ^{ㄅㄧㄢ}	hǎi biān	N	seashore, beach
2. 風 ^{ㄈㄥ} 景 ^{ㄐㄩㄥˇ}	fēngjǐng	N	scenery
3. 次 ^{ㄘㄧˋ}	cì	M	time(s)
4. 輕 ^{ㄑㄩㄥ} 鬆 ^{ㄙㄨㄥ}	qīngsōng	Vs	relaxing
5. 坐 ^{ㄗㄨㄛˋ}	zuò	V	take; ride
6. 船 ^{ㄔㄨㄢˊ}	chuán	N	boat
7. 潛 ^{ㄑㄧㄢˊ} 水 ^{ㄕㄨㄟˇ}	qiánshuǐ	V	to dive
8. 各 ^{ㄍㄜˋ}	gè	Det	each; every
9. 種 ^{ㄓㄨㄥˋ}	zhǒng	M	kind
10. 容 ^{ㄖㄨㄥˊ} 易 ^{ㄩˋ}	róngyì	Vs	easy
11. 教 ^{ㄐㄞˋ} 練 ^{ㄌㄧㄢˋ}	jiàoliàn	N	coach; instructor
12. 到 ^{ㄉㄠˋ} 處 ^{ㄘㄨˋ}	dàochù	N	everywhere
13. 晒 ^{ㄕㄞˋ}	shài	V	sunbathe
14. 旅 ^{ㄌㄩˇ} 館 ^{ㄍㄨㄢˇ}	lǚguǎn	N	hotel
15. 美 ^{ㄇㄟˇ}	měi	Vs	beautiful
16. 一 ^{ㄧˋ} 邊 ^{ㄅㄧㄢ}	yìbiān	Adv	on the one hand...; on the other hand...
17. 天 ^{ㄊㄧㄢ} 上 ^{ㄕㄨㄟˋ}	tiānshàng	N	in the sky
18. 星 ^{ㄒㄩㄥ} 星 ^{ㄒㄩㄥ}	xīngxing	N	stars

19. 心情^{心^T情^ク} xīnqíng N mood, frame of mind

20. 怎麼^{怎^P麼^何} zěnmě Adv how

21. 搭^カ dā V take; ride

22. 飛機^{飛^H機^H} fēijī N airplane

23. 租^フ zū V rent

24. 決定^{決^H定^カ} juéding V decide

短語

Phrases

25. 有一天^{有^ス一^一天^天} yǒuyìtiān one day

26. 海裡^{海^カ裡^リ} hǎi lǐ in the sea

27. 聽起來^{聽^ス起^ク來^カ} tīng qǐlái sounds

28. 看到^{看^カ到^ク} kàndào see, gaze at





Lesson 02 海邊的風景很漂亮

語法 Grammar

1 V + 起來 qǐlái it's my assessment or opinion that...

The “V+ 起來 *qǐlái*” pattern conveys the speaker's judgment or evaluation of a situation or thing. Verbs often used with this pattern include: “looks”; “sounds”; “tastes” (either as a result of eating or drinking); “to say” or “to speak of”; “to write” or “to write of”; “to do”; “to wear,” etc.

Examples:

N + V 起來 + (怎麼樣)

(1) 那個海邊的風景看起來真漂亮。

That seaside scenery looks really gorgeous.

(2) 這塊巧克力蛋糕吃起來太甜了。

This chocolate cake tastes too sweet.

(1) 這杯紅茶喝起來不甜。

Zhè bēi hóngchá hē qǐlái bù tián.

This cup of black tea does not taste sweet.

(2) 這雙運動鞋穿起來很舒服。

Zhè shuāng yùndòng xié chuān qǐlái hěn shūfú.

These sneakers are very comfortable to wear.

(3) 媽媽看起來很累。

Māma kàn qǐlái hěn lèi.

Mom seems tired.

(4) 「難」這個字寫起來不容易。

“Nán” zhè ge zì xiě qǐlái bù róngyì.

This character for “difficult” is not easy to write.



Exercise

After looking at each picture, use the “V + 起來” pattern to complete the sentence.

1



➡ 這碗牛肉麵_____

_____。(吃)

2



➡ 這件外套_____。
_____。（穿）

3



➡ 今天天氣_____。
_____。（看）

4



➡ 這兩個字_____。
_____。（寫）

5



➡ 春天的時候，公園_____。
_____。（看）

2

一邊……，一邊…… yìbiān..., yìbiān...

The “一邊 yìbiān……，一邊 yìbiān……” pattern is used to express two simultaneous actions.

Examples:

S + 一邊 + V，一邊 + V。

(1) 哥哥喜歡一邊看電視，一邊吃飯。

My older brother likes to watch TV and eat at the same time.

(2) 他一邊跟朋友聊天，一邊玩電腦遊戲。

He chatted with friends while playing a computer game.



Lesson 02 海邊的風景很漂亮

- (1) 媽媽一邊做飯，一邊唱歌。

Māma yìbiān zuò fàn, yìbiān chàng gē.

Mom sings while she makes a meal.

- (2) 爸爸常常一邊開車，一邊聽音樂。

Bàba chángcháng yìbiān kāi chē, yìbiān tīng yīnyuè.

Dad often listens to music while driving.

- (3) 我跟同事一邊工作，一邊聊天。

Wǒ gēn tóngshì yìbiān gōngzuò, yìbiān liáotiān.

I chat with colleagues while I work.

- (4) 我坐在公園，一邊休息，一邊看天上的星星。

Wǒ zuò zài gōngyuán, yìbiān xiūxi, yìbiān kàn tiānshàng de xīngxīng.

I sat in the park taking a rest while looking at the stars in the sky.



Exercise

Use the “一邊……，一邊……” pattern to describe the following actions illustrated.

1



➡ 麗莎 _____
_____。

2



➡ 高莉亞 _____
_____。

3



➡ 何希 _____
_____。

4



➡ 王明文 _____
_____。

5



➡ 他們 _____
_____。

3

怎麼 zěnmě how

Use “怎麼 zěnmě” to inquire about the way to do or accomplish something.

Examples:

(1) 你們怎麼去？

How did you (all) go (there)?

(2) 牛肉麵怎麼做？

How does one make beef noodles?

(1) 王老師，請問「海」這個字怎麼寫？

Wáng lǎoshī, qǐngwèn “hǎi” zhè ge zì zěnmě xiě?

Teacher Wang, may I ask, how does one write the character for “sea”?

(2) 高莉亞想學怎麼做紅燒魚。

Gāo Lìyǎ xiǎng xué zěnmě zuò hóngshāo yú.

Gloria wants to learn how to make red-cooked (braised) fish.

(3) 你打算怎麼去南部旅行？開車還是坐飛機？

Nǐ dǎsuàn zěnmě qù nánbù lǚxíng? Kāi chē háishì zuò fēijī?

How are you planning to travel to the south? By car or by plane?

(4) 你可以給我介紹一下，怎麼上網買東西嗎？

Nǐ kěyǐ gěi wǒ jièshào yíxià, zěnmě shàng wǎng mǎi dōngxi ma?

Could you show me how to buy something online?





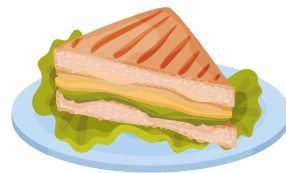
Lesson 02 海邊的風景很漂亮

Exercise

Correctly reorder the following sentences.

- 1 ①請問 ②做 ③雞肉 ④怎麼 ⑤三明治？

➡ _____ ？



- 2 ①你 ②怎麼 ③到 ④明天 ⑤學校 ⑥去？

➡ _____ ？

- 3 ①學生 ②教 ③老師 ④寫漢字 ⑤怎麼。

➡ _____ 。

- 4 ①「oolong tea」 ②中文 ③說 ④怎麼？

➡ _____ ？

- 5 ①怎麼 ②從 ③到 ④公園 ⑤你們家 ⑥走？

➡ _____ ？

4

To Focus with 是 shì……的 de

This sentence pattern is used to emphasize the principal focus of an event that has already transpired, which can be a person, place, time, or manner. “是 shì” is placed before the element of principal focus, while “的 de” is placed at the end of the sentence. The negative “不 bú” is always placed before “是 shì.”

Examples:

Subject + 是 + Focus + Action + 的。

(1) 我是昨天來的。(time)

I came yesterday.

- (2) 我是從臺灣來的。(place)
I came from Taiwan.
- (3) 我是開車來公司的。(manner)
I drove to the company.
- (4) 那碗牛肉麵是我做的。(subject)
I made that bowl of beef noodles.
- (5) 我不是昨天來的，我是今天來的。
I did not come yesterday, I came today.

- (1) 張家安是去工作的。
Zhāng Jiā'ān shì qù gōngzuò de.
Joann Zhang has gone to work.

- (2) 我上個月是去墨西哥度假的。
Wǒ shàng ge yuè shì qù Mòxīgē dùjià de.
Last month I went to Mexico on holiday.

- (3) 高莉亞是什麼時候去看醫生的？
Gāo Lìyǎ shì shénme shíhòu qù kàn yīshēng de?
When did Gloria go see the doctor?

- (4) 是誰打電話給你的？
Shì shéi dǎ diànhuà gěi nǐ de?
Who gave you a telephone call?



Exercise

Look at the illustrations and answer the following questions.

1



高莉亞是怎麼去墨西哥的？



_____。

2



高莉亞是跟誰一起去度假的？



_____。



Lesson 02 海邊的風景很漂亮

3



他是什麼時候去迪士尼樂園玩的？



_____。

4



他是在哪裡買背包的？



_____。

5



昨天晚上，是高莉亞做飯的嗎？



_____。

綜合活動

Classroom Activities



1. Read aloud

麗莎：聽說妳又去度假了。妳的假期怎麼樣？

高莉亞：這次度假又好玩又輕鬆。

麗莎：你們在那裡做了什麼？

高莉亞：我們天天去游泳，有一天還坐船去學潛水，
看到了海裡各種顏色的魚。

麗莎：聽起來很有意思。潛水很難嗎？

高莉亞：不容易，但是教練教得很好，我很快就會了。

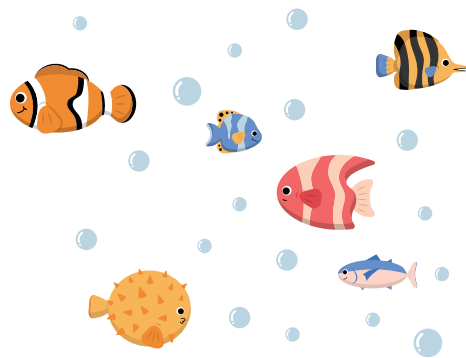
麗莎：上個週末是假期，海邊的人很多吧？

高莉亞：海邊到處都是人。我們這裡冬天的時候，大家都想去海邊晒太陽。

麗莎：你們住的旅館怎麼樣？

高莉亞：我們住的旅館離海邊很近，在旅館就可以看到海邊，風景很漂亮。

麗莎：我想晚上也很美。



高莉亞：是啊！我們在海邊，一邊散步，一邊看天上的星星，心情很輕鬆。

麗莎：你們是怎麼去的？

高莉亞：我們是搭飛機去的，到了那裡再租車去旅館，很方便。

麗莎：我決定下個假期也去那裡度假。

2. Fill in the blanks

Based on the preceding dialogue, fill in the missing words of each sentence with the appropriate characters or pinyin.

麗莎：聽說妳又去_____了。妳的假期怎麼樣？

高莉亞：這_____度假又好玩又_____。

麗莎：你們在那裡做了什麼？

高莉亞：我們天天去_____，有一天還_____去學潛水，
看到了海裡_____顏色的魚。

麗莎：_____很有意思。潛水很難嗎？

高莉亞：_____，但是教練教得很好，我很快就會了。

麗莎：上個週末是假期，_____的人很多吧？

高莉亞：海邊_____都是人。我們這裡冬天的時候，大家都想
去海邊晒_____。

麗莎：你們住的_____怎麼樣？

高莉亞：我們住的旅館離海邊很_____，在旅館就可以_____
海邊，_____很漂亮。

麗莎：我想晚上也很_____。

高莉亞：是啊！我們在海邊，一_____散步，一_____看天上的星星，
_____很輕鬆。



Lesson 02 海邊的風景很漂亮

麗莎：你們是_____去的？

高莉亞：我們是_____去的，到了那裡再_____車去旅館，很方便。

麗莎：我決定下個假期也去那裡度假。

3. Pair up with a classmate and ask each other the following questions about how you each spent your vacation.

① A：你是到哪裡去度假的？

B：_____。

② A：你是什麼時候去的？

B：_____。

③ A：你是怎麼去的？

B：_____。

④ A：你是跟誰一起去的？

B：_____。



4. Choose an illustration that depicts the location and season for your next vacation, then complete the sentences below to tell everyone why you chose to vacation at that location.



山上 (shānshàng, on the mountain)



海邊



荷蘭 (Hélán, Netherlands)



法國 (Fǎguó, France)

地點

◎下一個假期，我想去_____度假。

原因

- (1) _____ (那裡) 離這裡 (我家) ……，去 _____ (那裡) 很方便。
- (2) _____ (那裡) 的天氣……。
- (3) _____ (那裡) 看起來又……，又……。
- (4) _____ (那裡) 有……，也有……。
- (5) 在 _____ (那裡) 我可以……，也可以……。
- (6) 在 _____ (那裡) 我覺得……，我的心情……。





Lesson

02

海邊的風景很漂亮

Notes





Lesson

03

感恩節

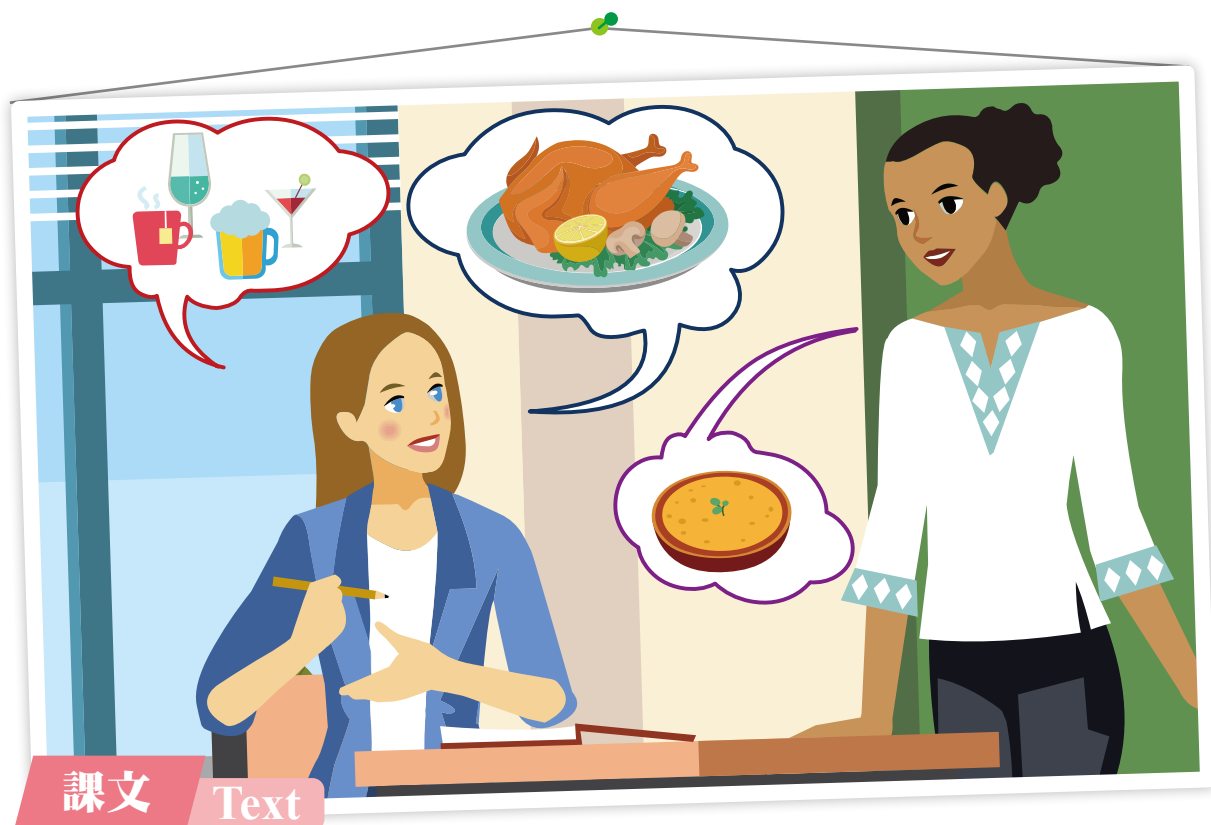
Thanksgiving Holiday

Learning Objectives

Topic: Holidays

By the end of this lesson, you will be able to use Mandarin to

1. Ask others what they think.
2. Explain your plans and arrangements for spending a holiday.
3. Explain your feelings about spending a holiday.
4. Enumerate Thanksgiving dishes.



課文

Text



嗨！高莉亞，在想什麼？
Hài! Gāo Lìyǎ, zài xiǎng shénme?



麗莎，我在想怎麼過感恩節。
Lìshā, wǒ zài xiǎng zěnmě guò Gǎn'ēn jié.



從現在到感恩節，只有十天，妳趕快決定吧！
Cóng xiànzài dào Gǎn'ēn jié, zhǐ yǒu shí tiān, nǐ gǎnkuài
juéding ba!



我想請不能回家的外國朋友來我家，
Wǒ xiǎng qǐng bù néng huí jiā de wàiguó péngyǒu lái wǒ jiā,
大家一起過節比較熱鬧。
dàjiā yìqǐ guò jié bǐjiào rènao.



太好了！我可以參加嗎？最近工作
Tài hào le! Wǒ kěyǐ cānjiā ma? Zuìjìn gōngzuò
很忙，沒時間回家過節。
hěn máng, méi shíjiān huí jiā guò jié.



非常^欢歡迎^{时 间}！我要^做很多^菜，怕^{时 间}時間^来來不及^来。妳^可可以^早一^點點^来來幫^忙忙嗎^吗？

Fēicháng huānyíng! Wǒ yào zuò hěn duō cài, pà shíjiān
lái bùjí. Nǐ kěyǐ zǎo yídiǎn lái bāngmáng ma?



沒^{問 題}問題^{請 个}。妳^可可以^請每^个個^{朋 友}朋友^{帶 一 點}帶一^點點^来來。

Méiwèntí. Nǐ kěyǐ qǐng měi ge péngyǒu dài yí diǎn
chī de dōngxi, zhèyàng qīngsōng yídiǎn.



妳^的的^{建 议}建議^{很 好}很好^{我 准 备}。我^{准 备}準備^{烤 火 鸡}烤火^雞雞，做^来來。

Nǐ de jiànyì hěn hǎo. Wǒ zhǔnbèi kǎo huǒjī, zuò
mǎlíngshǔní gēn shālā. Qǐng péngyǒu dài miànbāo,

甜^點點^{、 飲 料}、飲料^{和 水 果}和水果^来來。

tiándiǎn, yǐnliào hàn shuǐguǒ.
我^帶帶^{南 瓜}南^瓜瓜派^{、 秋 天 的 南 瓜}，秋^天天的^{南 瓜}南^瓜瓜非^常常^{好 吃}好吃^来來。



Wǒ dài nánguā pài, qiūtiān de nánguā fēicháng hǎochī.
聽^說說^{杜 翔}杜^翔翔很^會會^{做 麵 包}會做^{麵 包}麵^包包，我^請請^{他 帶}他^帶帶^來來。

Tīngshuō Dùxiáng hěn huì zuò miànbāo, wǒ qǐng tā dài
miànbāo.



再^{問 問 張}再^{問 問}問^{張 家 安}張^{家 安}家^安安，她^{好 像}她^{也 不 打 算}也^{不 打 算}不^{打 算}打^算算^来來。

Zài wènwèn Zhāng Jiā'ān, tā hǎoxiàng yě bù dǎsuàn
huíqù.



如^果果^{她 要 來}她^{要 來}要^來來，請^{她 帶 飲 料}請^{她 帶}她^{帶 飲 料}帶^{飲 料}飲^料料或^{是 水 果}是^{水 果}水^果果^来來。

Rúguǒ tā yào lái, qǐng tā dài yǐnliào huòshì shuǐguǒ.
今^年年^{的 感 恩 節}的^{感 恩 節}感^{恩 節}恩^節節一^定定^{很 有 意 思}很^{有 意 思}有^{意 思}意^思思^来來！



Jīnnián de Gǎn'ēn jié yíding hěn yǒuyìsi!
跟^{朋 友}朋^友友一^{起 過 節}起^{過 節}過^節節，我^{也 覺 得}也^{覺 得}覺^得得^{很 開 心}很^{開 心}開^心心^来來。



Gēn péngyǒu yìqǐ guò jié, wǒ yě juéde hěn kāixīn.



Lesson 03 感恩節

生詞 Vocabulary

1. 感 ^{ㄍǎ} 恩 ^ē 節 ^{ㄉㄧㄝˊ}	Gǎn'ēn jié	N	Thanksgiving (U.S. holiday)
2. 嗨 ^{ㄏㄞ}	hài	Ptc	Hi!
3. 過 ^{ㄍㄨㄛˋ}	guò	V	spend, celebrate [a holiday]
4. 趕 ^{ㄍǎ} 快 ^{ㄎㄞˋ}	gǎnkuài	Adv	hurry up and [V], [V] immediately
5. 外 ^{ㄨㄞˋ} 國 ^{ㄍㄨㄛˊ}	wàiguó	N	foreign country
6. 熱 ^{ㄖㄜˋ} 鬧 ^{ㄋㄠˋ}	rènao	Vs	[an event or scene] is lively, boisterous
7. 可 ^{ㄎㄜˋ} 以 ^{ㄧˇ}	kěyǐ	Vaux	may, might
8. 參 ^{ㄘㄢ} 加 ^{ㄐㄧㄚ}	cānjiā	V	participate, take part in
9. 菜 ^{ㄘㄞˋ}	cài	N	food, dish (prepared item of food)
10. 怕 ^{ㄆㄚˋ}	pà	V	be afraid that..., fear that...
11. 來 ^{ㄌㄞˊ} 不 ^{ㄨˊ} 及 ^{ㄉㄧˊ}	láibùjí	V	cannot do [something] in time
12. 早 ^{ㄗㄞˇ}	zǎo	Vs	early
13. 一 ^ㄧ 點 ^{ㄉㄧㄢˇ}	yìdiǎn	Vs	a bit, a small amount
14. 幫 ^{ㄅㄞ} 忙 ^{ㄇㄞˊ}	bāngmáng	V	help, assist
15. 這 ^{ㄓㄜˋ} 樣 ^{ㄩㄥˋ}	zhèyàng	Det	In this way
16. 建 ^{ㄐㄧㄢˋ} 議 ^{ㄧˋ}	jiànyì	N	suggestion
17. 烤 ^{ㄎㄞˇ}	kǎo	V	bake, roast
18. 火 ^{ㄏㄨㄛˊ} 雞 ^{ㄐㄧ}	huǒjī	N	turkey

19. 馬鈴薯泥	mǎlíngshǔní	N	mashed potatoes
20. 沙拉	shālā	N	salad
21. 麵包	miànbāo	N	bread, rolls
22. 甜點	tiándiǎn	N	dessert
23. 南瓜派	nánguā pài	N	pumpkin pie
24. 好像	hǎoxiàng	Adv	it seems that...
25. 或是	huòshì	Conj	or...
26. 開心	kāixīn	Vs	happy
27. 晚	wǎn	Vs	late

短語

Phrases

28. 回家	huí jiā	go home
29. 過節	guò jié	spend/celebrate a holiday
30. 早一點	zǎo yìdiǎn	a bit early
31. 烤火雞	kǎo huǒjī	roast turkey





語法 Grammar

1 從……到…… cóng... dào... from... to...

This sentence pattern is used to designate the duration of a situation through demarcating its starting and ending times. In Book 2, Lesson 6, the pattern “從 cóng place A + 到 dào Place B” was introduced to indicate a situation existing or happening between two places.

Examples:

從 time + 到 + time, ……

(1) 從今天到週末，我都很忙。

I will be very busy from today until the weekend.

(2) 他從下個星期一到星期五休假。

He will be on vacation next Monday through Friday.

(1) 從現在到晚上，我都不吃東西。

Cóng xiànzài dào wǎnshàng, wǒ dōu bú yào chī dōngxi.

I do not want to eat anything from now until tonight.

(2) 從 2020 年到 2022 年，張先生都在貿易公司工作。

Cóng 2020 nián dào 2022 nián, Zhāng xiānshēng dōu zài mào yì gōng sī gōng zuò.

Mr. Zhang worked at a trading company from 2020 to 2022.

(3) 星期五晚上，從七點到八點半，我要上課。

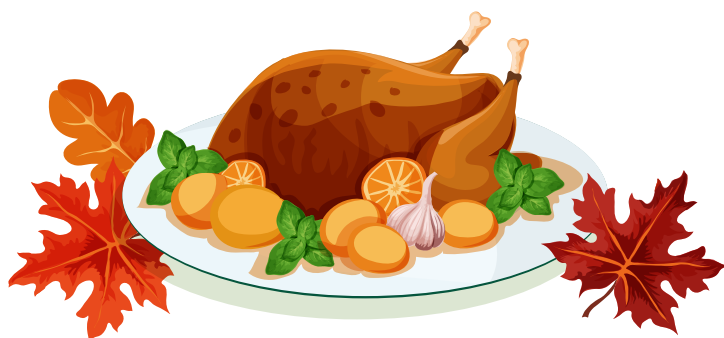
Xīngqíwǔ wǎnshàng, cóng qī diǎn dào bā diǎn bàn, wǒ yào shàngkè.

I will be in class from 7:00 to 8:30 Friday night.

(4) 媽媽從上個星期到今天，都在準備感恩節的烤火雞。

Māma cóng shàng ge xīngqí dào jīntiān, dōu zài zhǔnbèi Gǎn'ēn jié de kǎo huǒjī.

From last week until today, Mom has been preparing the Thanksgiving roast turkey.



Exercise

Use “從……到……” to answer questions.

1 從今天到下星期一還有幾天？

➡ _____。（三天）

2 你常常去運動嗎？

➡ 是，我_____都去跑步。
（星期一～星期四）

3 你住的地方，哪幾個月很冷？

➡ _____都很冷。
（十一月～一月）

4 你星期四有時間跟我一起去逛街嗎？

➡ 不行，我_____，都得上班。
（星期一～星期五）

5 你們公司中午可以休息多久？

➡ _____休息。
（十二點～一點半）





2

早 / 晚 + 一點 + V zǎo/wǎn + yìdiǎn + V

“早 zǎo / 晚 wǎn” placed before “一點 yìdiǎn” form an adverbial phrase that expresses going to do something earlier or later.

Examples:

(1) 請你明天早一點來公司。

Please come to the company a bit earlier tomorrow.

(2) 今天工作很多，我得晚一點下班。

There is a lot of work to do today, [so] I have to get off work a bit later.

(1) 快要下雨了，我得早一點回家。

Kuàiyào xià yǔ le, wǒ děi zǎo yìdiǎn huí jiā.

It is about to rain, [so] I must go home a bit earlier [than usual].

(2) 明天有很多事，我應該早一點去公司。

Míngtiān yǒu hěn duō shì, wǒ yīnggāi zǎo yìdiǎn qù gōngsī.

There are a lot of things to do tomorrow, [so] I should go to the office a bit earlier.

(3) 高莉亞現在不在家，你晚一點給她打電話。

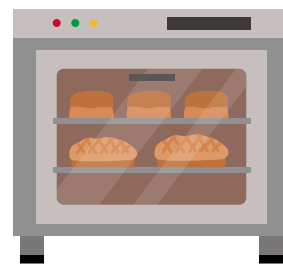
Gāo Lìyǎ xiànzài bú zài jiā, nǐ wǎn yìdiǎn gěi tā dǎ diànhuà.

Gloria is not home now, [so] call her a bit later.

(4) 客人五點到，我晚一點再烤麵包。

Kèrén wǔ diǎn dào, wǒ wǎn yìdiǎn zài kǎo miànbāo.

The guests will arrive at 5:00, [so] I will bake the rolls a bit later.



Exercise

Use “早一點 + V / 晚一點 + V” to reply to the following sentences.

1



：你平常七點起床，今天怎麼六點就起床了？



：因為今天八點要到公司，所以我_____

。



2



：妳想什麼時候去臺灣旅行？



：臺灣七月、八月太熱了，我想_____

_____。

3



：王明文，畢業以後你打算什麼時候回家？



：我爸爸媽媽希望我_____

_____。

4



：哥，明天去迪士尼樂園，我們什麼時候出門？



：週末人很多，我們_____

_____。

5



：妳今天就要烤火雞嗎？



：是，雖然到感恩節還有三天，但是我想_____

_____。



3 Vs 一點 yìdiǎn

When a state verb is considered an adjective, suffixing “一點 yìdiǎn” indicates that the degree of the adjective is either a bit more or a bit less than generally perceived.

Examples:

(1) 他這個月比上個月忙一點。

He is a bit busier this month than last month.

(2) 我覺得這家餐廳的菜好吃一點。(比別的餐廳好吃)

I feel that the food at this restaurant is a bit tastier. (than at other restaurants)

(1) 今年夏天比去年夏天熱一點。

Jīnnián xiàtiān bǐ qùnián xiàtiān rè yìdiǎn.

Summer this year is a bit hotter than summer last year.

(2) 週末的時候不做飯，媽媽輕鬆一點。

Zhōumò de shíhòu bú zuò fàn, māma qīngsōng yìdiǎn.

When she does not cook on weekends, Mom has it a bit easier.

(3) 我想住得離公司近一點，所以打算搬家。

Wǒ xiǎng zhù de lí gōngsī jìn yìdiǎn, suǒyǐ dǎsuàn bānjiā.

I want to live a bit closer to work, so I am planning on moving.



(4) 雖然這件衣服貴一點，可是穿起來比較舒服。

Suīrán zhè jiàn yīfú guì yìdiǎn, kěshì chuān qǐlái bǐjiào shūfú.

Although this attire is a bit more expensive, it is more comfortable to wear.

Exercise

Use “Vs 一點” to reply to the following sentences.

① 感恩節你請十幾個朋友吃飯，做飯累不累？

➡ 不累，我喜歡_____。(熱鬧)

② 你吃什麼東西會覺得開心？

➡ 我_____。(開心)

3 你為什麼喜歡上網買東西？

➡ _____。（便宜 / 方便）

4 今天的酸辣湯會不會太辣？

➡ 沒關係，我喜歡_____。（辣）

5 你的咖啡要加多少糖？

➡ 麻煩多加一點，我愛喝_____。（甜）

綜合活動

Classroom Activities

1. Read aloud

麗莎：嗨！高莉亞，在想什麼？

高莉亞：麗莎，我在想怎麼過感恩節。

麗莎：從現在到感恩節，只有十天，妳趕快決定吧！

高莉亞：我想請不能回家的外國朋友來我家，大家一起過節比較熱鬧。

麗莎：太好了！我可以參加嗎？最近工作很忙，沒時間回家過節。

高莉亞：非常歡迎！我要做很多菜，怕時間來不及。妳可以早一點來幫忙嗎？

麗莎：沒問題。妳可以請每個朋友帶一點吃的東西，這樣輕鬆一點。

高莉亞：妳的建議很好。我準備烤火雞，做馬鈴薯泥跟沙拉。請朋友帶麵包、甜點、飲料和水果。

麗莎：我帶南瓜派，秋天的南瓜非常好吃。

高莉亞：聽說杜翔很會做麵包，我請他帶麵包。

麗莎：再問問張家安，她好像也不打算回去。

高莉亞：如果她要來，請她帶飲料或是水果。

麗莎：今年的感恩節一定很有意思！

高莉亞：跟朋友一起過節，我也覺得很開心。





2. Fill in the blanks

Based on the preceding dialogue, fill in the missing words of each sentence with the appropriate characters or pinyin.

麗莎：嗨！高莉亞，在_____什麼？

高莉亞：麗莎，我在想怎麼_____感恩節。

麗莎：從_____到感恩節，只有十天，妳_____決定吧！

高莉亞：我想請不能_____的_____朋友來我家，大家一起_____比較_____。

麗莎：太好了！我_____參加嗎？最近工作很忙，沒時間回家過節。

高莉亞：非常歡迎！我要做很多_____，怕時間_____。妳可以_____一點來幫_____嗎？

麗莎：沒問題。妳可以請每個朋友帶一點吃的東西，這樣輕鬆一點。

高莉亞：妳的_____很好。我準備_____火雞，做馬鈴薯泥跟沙拉。請朋友帶麵_____、甜點、飲料和_____。

麗莎：我帶南瓜派，秋天的_____非常好吃。

高莉亞：聽說杜翔很會做麵包，我請他帶麵包。

麗莎：再問問張家安，她_____也不打算回去。

高莉亞：如果她要來，請她帶飲料_____水果。

麗莎：今年的感恩節一定很有_____！

高莉亞：跟朋友一起過節，我也覺得很_____。

3. Pair up with a classmate and ask each other the following questions about how you spent your holidays.

① A：你怎麼過_____（感恩節 / 聖誕節 / 新年）？

B：_____。

② A：你是跟誰一起過的？

B：_____。

③ A：過節的時候，你吃什麼菜？

B：_____。

④ A：你會做什麼甜點？

B：_____。

⑤ A：你覺得過_____開心嗎？

B：_____。

Supplementary vocabulary

聖誕節	Shèngdàn jié	Christmas
復活節	Fùhuó jié	Easter
新年	Xīnnián	New Year's Day [Gregorian Calendar]





Lesson 03 感恩節

4. Follow the turkey tracks and explain what each picture depicts.



5. Answer the questions based on the invitation card.



Questions:

- (1) 高莉亞為什麼請朋友去她家？
- (2) 高莉亞請朋友什麼時候去？



文化單元 (一) Culture Notes

The Lunar Calendar

2022

9月
September



SUN	MON	TUE	WED	THU	FRI	SAT
				1 初六	2 初七	3 初八
4 初九	5 初十	6 十一	7 白露	8 十三	9 十四	10 中秋節
11 十六	12 十七	13 十八	14 十九	15 二十	16 廿一	17 廿二
18 廿三	19 廿四	20 廿五	21 廿六	22 廿七	23 秋分	24 廿九
25 三十	26 九月	27 初二	28 初三	29 初四	30 初五	

中秋節




謝謝妳請我去妳家過感恩節，我玩得很開心。



不客氣。請問，華人秋天有什麼節日？



我們秋天有中秋節（Zhōngqiū jié, Moon Festival）。



是哪一天？



不一定（bùyíding, It is not a fixed date），中秋節的日期得看華人的日曆。

Taiwan and other areas where Chinese culture is mainstream feature supplemental use of a different calendar than the Gregorian calendar used in most other parts of the modern world. The term *nónglì* refers to the lunar calendar utilized in Chinese-speaking areas for more than two-thousand years that was formulated in ancient times based on both the lunar calendar and observations of the movements of the sun. This design, combining the concepts of lunar and solar calendars, facilitated both a more precise understanding of the laws of climate change and arrangement of farming activities and daily life according to the explications of the lunar calendar.

In modern society, the Chinese, like people elsewhere, primarily arrange their lives according to the Gregorian (solar) calendar; yet, they still observe traditional folk customs according to the dates of the lunar calendar. For example, the Spring Festival (Lunar New Year) falls on the 1st day of the first lunar calendar month; the Lantern Festival, on the 15th day of that same month; the Dragon Boat Festival, on the 5th day of the fifth lunar calendar month; and the Mid-Autumn Festival (Moon Festival), on the 15th day of the eighth lunar calendar month. Thus, these major traditional holidays in a Chinese society end up being observed on different dates each year according to the Gregorian (solar) calendar. Also, the birthdays of elders (which were only officially recorded many decades ago according to the lunar calendar) and the dates for offering oblations to gods or ancestors continue to be observed according to the lunar calendar. Therefore, the lunar calendar remains a very meaningful aspect of life in Taiwan today, even if its utilization is now supplemental to the official ordering of public activities in a modern globalized society.





Lesson

04

公司派我到這裡工作

The Company Sent Me to Work Here

Learning Objectives

Topic: Work

By the end of this lesson, you will be able to use Mandarin to

1. Describe your current work situation.
2. Describe the characteristics of your company.
3. Describe what you think about your future.



Lesson 04 公司派我到這裡工作



課文 Text



請問妳是高莉亞嗎？
Wéi! Qǐng wèn nǐ shì Gāo Lìyǎ ma?



我就是。妳是哪一位？
Wǒ jiù shì. Nǐ shì nǎ wèi?



我是王明文，妳還記得我嗎？
Wǒ shì Wáng Míngwén, nǐ hái jìde wǒ ma?



哇！王明文，當然記得。妳是來美國
Wa! Wáng Míngwén, dāngrán jìde. Nǐ shì lái Měiguó

嗎？
lǚxíng de ma?



不是，我們公司派我來美國的
Búshì, wǒmen gōngsī pài wǒ lái Měiguó de

分公司工作。
fēngōngsī gōngzuò.



妳現在在什麼公司工作？
Nǐ xiànzài zài shénme gōngsī gōngzuò?



我^ㄨ在^ㄟ一^ㄟ家^ㄟ科^ㄟ技^ㄟ公^ㄟ司^ㄟ工^ㄟ作^ㄟ，因^ㄟ為^ㄟ我^ㄟ對^ㄟ
Wǒ zài yì jiā kējì gōngsī gōngzuò, yīnwèi wǒ duì

美^ㄟ國^ㄟ的^ㄟ情^ㄟ形^ㄟ比^ㄟ較^ㄟ了^ㄟ解^ㄟ，所^ㄟ以^ㄟ公^ㄟ司^ㄟ派^ㄟ
Měiguó de qíngxíng bǐjiào liǎojiě, suǒyǐ gōngsī pài

我^ㄟ來^ㄟ這^ㄟ裡^ㄟ。
wǒ lái zhèlǐ.



太^ㄟ好^ㄟ了^ㄟ！你^ㄟ要^ㄟ來^ㄟ這^ㄟ裡^ㄟ多^ㄟ久^ㄟ？
Tài hǎo le! Nǐ yào lái zhèlǐ duō jiǔ?



公^ㄟ司^ㄟ希^ㄟ望^ㄟ我^ㄟ至^ㄟ少^ㄟ來^ㄟ這^ㄟ裡^ㄟ一^ㄟ年^ㄟ。
Gōngsī xīwàng wǒ zhìshǎo lái zhèlǐ yì nián.



我^ㄟ知^ㄟ道^ㄟ臺^ㄟ灣^ㄟ在^ㄟ電^ㄟ腦^ㄟ科^ㄟ技^ㄟ方^ㄟ面^ㄟ發^ㄟ展^ㄟ得^ㄟ
Wǒ zhīdào Táiwān zài diànnǎo kējì fāngmiàn fāzhǎn de

相^ㄟ當^ㄟ好^ㄟ，很^ㄟ多^ㄟ公^ㄟ司^ㄟ很^ㄟ有^ㄟ名^ㄟ。
xiāngdāng hǎo, hěn duō gōngsī hěn yǒumíng.



是^ㄟ啊^ㄟ！我^ㄟ們^ㄟ公^ㄟ司^ㄟ跟^ㄟ很^ㄟ多^ㄟ國^ㄟ家^ㄟ的^ㄟ公^ㄟ司^ㄟ
Shì a! Wǒmen gōngsī gēn hěn duō guójiā de gōngsī

合^ㄟ作^ㄟ，產^ㄟ品^ㄟ也^ㄟ賣^ㄟ到^ㄟ世^ㄟ界^ㄟ各^ㄟ國^ㄟ。
hézuò, chǎnpǐn yě mǎidào shìjiè gè guó.



你^ㄟ一^ㄟ畢^ㄟ業^ㄟ就^ㄟ回^ㄟ臺^ㄟ灣^ㄟ，我^ㄟ以^ㄟ為^ㄟ你^ㄟ會^ㄟ
Nǐ yí bìyè jiù huí Táiwān, wǒ yǐwéi nǐ huì

一^ㄟ直^ㄟ在^ㄟ臺^ㄟ灣^ㄟ工^ㄟ作^ㄟ。
yìzhí zài Táiwān gōngzuò.



雖^ㄟ然^ㄟ在^ㄟ臺^ㄟ灣^ㄟ很^ㄟ好^ㄟ，可^ㄟ是^ㄟ在^ㄟ美^ㄟ國^ㄟ的^ㄟ
Suīrán zài Táiwān hěn hǎo, kěshì zài Měiguó de

工^ㄟ作^ㄟ經^ㄟ驗^ㄟ對^ㄟ我^ㄟ的^ㄟ未^ㄟ來^ㄟ有^ㄟ幫^ㄟ助^ㄟ。
gōngzuò jīngyàn duì wǒ de wèilái yǒu bāngzhù.



你^ㄟ剛^ㄟ來^ㄟ，工^ㄟ作^ㄟ忙^ㄟ不^ㄟ忙^ㄟ？
Nǐ gāng lái, gōngzuò máng bù máng?



Lesson 04 公司派我到這裡工作



第^一個^月很^忙，這^個月^輕鬆^一點^了。
Dì-yī ge yuè hěn máng, zhè ge yuè qīngsōng yìdiǎn le.



那^麼，你^有空^的時^候，我^們再^約時^間見^面吧[。]
Nàme, nǐ yǒu kòng de shíhòu, wǒmen zài yuē shíjiān jiànmiàn ba.

生詞

Vocabulary

1. 派 ^多	pài	V	send, post
2. 還 ^多	hái	Adv	still
3. 記 ^得	jìde	V	remember
4. 哇 ^多	wa	Ptc	Wow!
5. 當 ^然	dāngrán	Adv	of course
6. 分 ^公 司 ^公	fēngōngsī	N	branch company
7. 科 ^技	kējì	N	technology
8. 對 ^多	duì	Prep	to
9. 情 ^形	qíngxíng	N	situation
10. 了 ^解	liǎojiě	Vs	understand
11. 至 ^少	zhìshǎo	Adv	at least
12. 知 ^道	zhīdào	V	know
13. 方 ^面	fāngmiàn	N	aspect

14. 發 _{ㄜˋ} 展 _{ㄓㄢˋ}	fāzhǎn	V	develop
15. 相 _{ㄒㄩㄥˊ} 當 _{ㄉㄤ}	xiāngdāng	Adv	considerably
16. 有 _{ㄩˇ} 名 _{ㄇㄧㄥˊ}	yǒumíng	Vs	famous, prominent
17. 合 _{ㄏㄜˊ} 作 _{ㄗㄜˋ}	hézuò	V	cooperate
18. 產 _{ㄔㄢˇ} 品 _{ㄆㄧㄣˇ}	chǎnpǐn	N	product
19. 世 _{ㄕㄟˋ} 界 _{ㄐㄟˋ}	shìjiè	N	world
20. 以 _{ㄩˇ} 為 _{ㄨㄟˊ}	yǐwéi	V	suppose, presume
21. 一 _{ㄧˋ} 直 _{ㄓㄧˊ}	yìzhí	Adv	consistently, all the way through
22. 經 _{ㄐㄩㄥˊ} 驗 _{ㄧㄢˋ}	jīngyàn	N	experience
23. 未 _{ㄨㄟˋ} 來 _{ㄌㄞˊ}	wèilái	N	future
24. 幫 _{ㄅㄤ} 助 _{ㄓㄨˋ}	bāngzhù	V	help, assist
25. 剛 _{ㄍㄤ}	gāng	Adv	just
26. 約 _{ㄩㄝˊ}	yuē	V	make an appointment, agree a date
27. 見 _{ㄐㄩㄢˋ} 面 _{ㄇㄧㄢˋ}	jiànmiàn	V	meet up [with someone]





語法 Grammar

1 Adverb 還 hái still

The adverb “還 hái” indicates that an action continues to take place or a situation remains. It often precedes a verb or verb phrase, as in the sentence, “我還想喝咖啡 I still want to drink coffee.” The negative “不 bú” or “沒 méi” negates the indicated situation, as in the sentence, “我還不知道他的名字 I still don’t know his name.” As such, this is a new and different meaning for the adverb as it was presented in Book 1, Lesson 6, when “還 hái” meant “also, in addition.”

Examples:

- (1) 我明年夏天還想去海邊度假。(B3,L4)
I want go vacation at the seashore in the summer next year.
- (2) 感恩節還沒到，很多人已經買了火雞。(B3,L4)
[Although] it is not yet Thanksgiving, many people have already bought a turkey.
- (3) 我喜歡唱歌，還喜歡跳舞。(B1,L6)
I like to sing, and also like to dance.

- (1) 已經五月了，天氣還很冷。

Yǐjīng wǔ yuè le, tiānqì hái hěn lěng.

It is already May, [yet] the weather is still chilly.

- (2) 時間還早，我想晚一點出門。

Shíjiān hái zǎo, wǒ xiǎng wǎn yídiǎn chūmén.

It is still early, [so] I want to leave a bit later.

- (3) 你還頭痛嗎？要不要去看醫生？

Nǐ hái tóutòng ma? Yào bú yào qù kàn yīshēng?

You still have a headache? Do you want to go see a doctor?

- (4) 雖然工作很忙，但是我還想繼續學中文。

Suīrán gōngzuò hěn máng, dànshì wǒ hái xiǎng jìxù xué Zhōngwén.

Although [my] work is busy, I still want to go on learning Mandarin.



Exercise

Use “還 *hái*” to answer the following questions.

① A：你記得我的電話號碼嗎？

B：當然，我_____。

② A：我們週末去海邊潛水，好不好？

B：現在是二月，天氣_____，

我們下個月再去吧。

③ A：張家安搬家了嗎？

B：沒有，她還_____。

④ A：聽說你感冒了，好了嗎？

B：我吃了藥，可是_____。

⑤ A：你們決定去哪裡度假了嗎？

B：我們最近太忙了，所以_____。





2 Preposition 對 duì to, towards

The preposition 對 *duì*, meaning “to, towards,” indicates the target of the verb or the that which is related to something.

Examples:

- (1) 老師對你說了什麼？
What did the teacher say to you?
- (2) 哥哥對在網路買東西很了解。
[My] big brother understands how to buy things online.
- (3) 我們公司對每個人都很好。
Our company is good to every one [of us].

- (1) 我對爸爸說：「生日快樂」。

Wǒ duì bàba shuō: “Shēngrì kuàilè”.

I said “happy birthday” to Dad.

- (2) 下課了，老師對大家說再見。

Xià kè le, lǎoshī duì dàjiā shuō zàijiàn.

After the class ended, the teacher said goodbye to everyone.

- (3) 媽媽對自己的身體很注意。

Māma duì zìjǐ de shēntǐ hěn zhùyì.

Mom pays close attention to her health.

- (4) 那家餐廳的服務員對我們很客氣。

Nà jiā cāntīng de fúwùyuán duì wǒmen hěn kèqì.

The waiters at that restaurant are very polite to us.



Exercise

Correctly reorder the words in the following sentences.

- ① ①醫生 ②麗莎 ③對 ④說 ⑤多喝水。

➡ _____。



② ①王明文 ②很了解 ③方面 ④電腦 ⑤科技 ⑥對。

➡ _____。

③ ①那家 ②對 ③旅館 ④客人 ⑤好不好？

➡ _____？



④ ①我 ②對 ③剛 ④同事 ⑤什麼 ⑥說了 ⑦不記得。

➡ _____。

⑤ ①請你 ②對 ③說 ④不要 ⑤同事 ⑥不客氣的話。

➡ _____。

3

V + 到 dào (post-verb preposition) up to, till

The preposition“ 到 dào ” after a verb points to the end point of the action expressed by the verb. At times it is a spatial end point, at others it is a temporal endpoint.

Examples:

(1) 我走到咖啡店。

I went to the coffee store.

(2) 我上課上到下午五點。

I was in class until 5 p.m.

(3) 我們公司的產品賣到世界各國。

Our company's products are sold to every country in the world.

(1) 張家安從東部搬到這裡。(B3,L1)

Zhāng Jiā'ān cóng dōngbù bāndào zhèlǐ.

Joann Zhang moved here from the East.

(2) 王明文希望找到一個喜歡的工作。(B2,L10)

Wáng Míngwén xīwàng zhǎodào yí ge xǐhuān de gōngzuò.

Wang Mingwen is hoping to find a job he likes.



Lesson 04 公司派我到這裡工作

(3) 張家安打算繼續學中文學到明年。

Zhāng Jiā'ān dǎsuàn jìxù xué Zhōngwén xuédào míngnián.

Joann Zhang wants to continue learning Mandarin through next year.

(4) 從這裡搭飛機搭到那裡差不多三個小時。

Cóng zhèlǐ dā fēijī dādào nàlǐ chābùduō sān ge xiǎoshí.

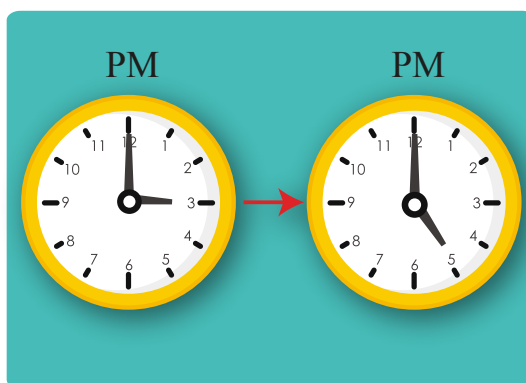
It is almost a three-hour flight from here to there.



Exercise

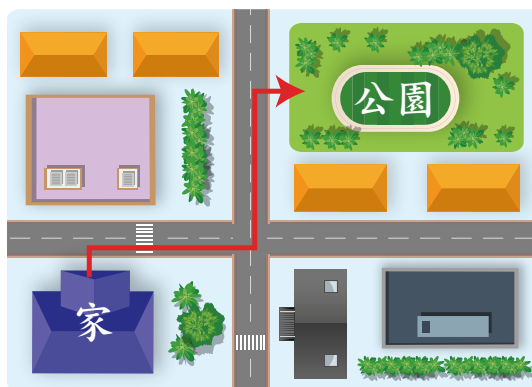
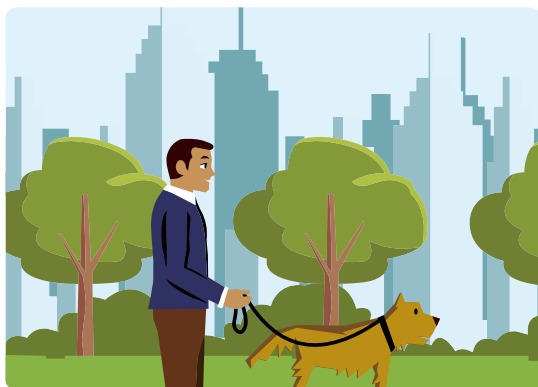
Look at each illustration and answer the sentence beneath it.

1



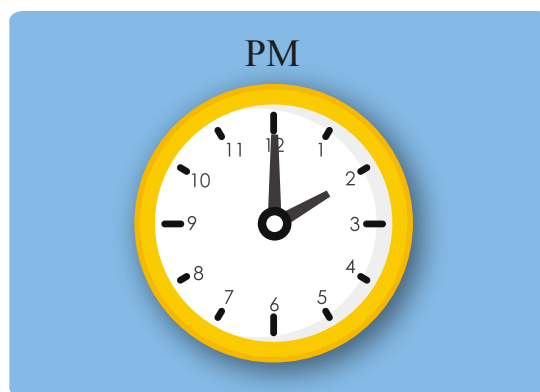
➡ 高莉亞烤火雞，從_____。（烤）。

2



➡ 何希帶狗散步，從_____。（走）。

3



➡ 這家餐廳的牛肉麵只_____，
晚上不賣。（賣）

4



➡ 這個學期我們已經_____了。（學）

5



➡ 過感恩節的時候，我們會從星期四一直_____
_____。（過）



4 S 對 duì……有 yǒu + N

This sentence pattern “對 *duì*” indicates the attitude or thoughts of the subject of the sentence toward a thing or topic. Adding “有 *yǒu* + N” becomes a Vs, where this noun is abstract, such as “help 幫助”, “interest 興趣”, “experience 經驗” and “benefit 好處,” etc.

A degree adverb can be placed before the “有 *yǒu* + N” structure to describe the degree of the Vs, as exemplified by the sentence “林老師對教中文很有經驗” (Teacher Lin has much experience with teaching Mandarin.) The adverb of degree can also occur within the “有 + 名詞” sentence structure, as in the sentence, “張家安對照相有很大的興趣” (Joann Zhang is greatly interested in photography.)

Examples:

- (1) 到國外工作對我的未來有幫助。
Going overseas for work will be of help to my future.
- (2) 林老師對教中文很有經驗。
Teacher Lin has much experience with teaching Mandarin.
- (3) 張家安對照相有很大的興趣。
Joann Zhang is greatly interested in photography.

(1) 運動對身體健康有幫助。

Yùndòng duì shēntǐ jiànkāng yǒu bāngzhù.

Exercise is helpful toward being healthy.

(2) 哥哥對電腦遊戲很有興趣。

Gēgē duì diànnǎo yóuxì hěn yǒu xìngqù.

My older brother is very interested in computer games.



(3) 有工作經驗對未來找工作有幫助。

Yǒu gōngzuò jīngyàn duì wèilái zhǎo gōngzuò yǒu bāngzhù.

Having job experience is helpful in finding a job in the future.

(4) 我對教書沒有經驗。

Wǒ duì jiāoshū méiyǒu jīngyàn.

I have no experience with teaching.

Exercise

Use the “對……有 + N” pattern to rewrite the following sentences.

1 高莉亞很喜歡做南瓜派。

➡ _____。(興趣)

2 爸爸覺得跑步對身體很好。

➡ _____。(幫助)

3 張家安喜歡收集貓的照片。

➡ _____。(興趣)

4 媽媽以前在小學教過書。

➡ _____。(經驗)

5 醫生說生病的時候應該多喝水、多休息。

➡ _____。(幫助)

綜合活動

Classroom Activities

1. Read aloud

王明文：喂！請問妳是高莉亞嗎？

高莉亞：我就是。你是哪位？

王明文：我是王明文，妳還記得我嗎？

高莉亞：哇！王明文，當然記得。你是來美國旅行的嗎？

王明文：不是，我們公司派我來美國的分公司工作。

高莉亞：你現在在什麼公司工作？

王明文：我在一家科技公司工作，因為我對美國的情形比較了解，所以公司派我來這裡。

高莉亞：太好了！你要來這裡多久？

王明文：公司希望我至少來這裡一年。

高莉亞：我知道臺灣在電腦科技方面發展得相當好，很多公司很有名。

王明文：是啊！我們公司跟很多國家的公司合作，產品也賣到世界各國。





Lesson 04 公司派我到這裡工作

高莉亞：你一畢業就回臺灣，我以為你會一直在臺灣工作。

王明文：雖然在臺灣很好，可是在美國的工作經驗對我的未來有幫助。

高莉亞：你剛來，工作忙不忙？

王明文：第一個月很忙，這個月輕鬆一點了。

高莉亞：那麼，你有空的時候，我們再約時間見面吧。



2. Fill in the blanks

Based on the preceding dialogue, fill in the missing words of each sentence with the appropriate characters or pinyin.

王明文：喂！_____ 妳是高莉亞嗎？

高莉亞：我_____ 是。你是哪位？

王明文：我是王明文，妳還_____ 我嗎？

高莉亞：_____！王明文，_____ 記得。你是來美國_____ 的嗎？

王明文：不是，我們公司派我來美國的_____ 工作。

高莉亞：你現在在什麼公司工作？

王明文：我在一家_____ 公司工作，因為我_____ 美國的情形比較_____，所以公司_____ 我來這裡。

高莉亞：太好了！你要來這裡多久？

王明文：公司_____ 我_____ 來這裡一年。

高莉亞：我知道臺灣在電腦科技方面_____ 得_____ 好，很多公司很_____。

王明文：是啊！我們公司跟很多國家的公司_____，_____ 也_____ 到_____ 各國。

高莉亞：你一畢業就回臺灣，我_____你會_____在臺灣工作。

王明文：雖然在臺灣很好，可是在美國的工作經驗，對我的_____有_____。

高莉亞：你_____來，工作忙不忙？

王明文：第一個月很忙，這個月輕鬆一點了。

高莉亞：那麼，你有空的時候，我們再_____時間_____吧。

 3. Pair up with a classmate and ask each other the following questions about your work.

① A：你在哪裡工作？

B：_____。

② A：你在這裡工作多久了？

B：_____。

③ A：你的工作是什麼？

B：_____。

④ A：你覺得你的工作怎麼樣？

B：_____。

⑤ A：你喜歡這個工作嗎？為什麼？

B：_____。



Lesson 04 公司派我到這裡工作

6 A：你想不想換工作？為什麼？

B：_____。

4. Fill in the blanks of the following sentences with words that tell everyone what you think about going overseas to work.



1 我的公司在_____

(幾個國家或地方的名字) 有分公司。

2 如果有機會派到外國去，我想去_____，因為_____。

(1) 我會說_____。

(2) 聽說那個國家_____。

(3) 去那裡工作對我未來_____。

③ 如果公司派我到_____去，我不想去，因為_____。

(1) 我不會說_____。

(2) 我怕那裡的_____。

(3) 在那裡我沒有_____。

Supplementary vocabulary

日本	Rìběn	Japan
印度	Yìndù	India
英國	Yīngguó	United Kingdom
法國	Fǎguó	France
巴西	Bāxī	Brazil

5. If you could change jobs, where would you want to go work?





Lesson 04 公司派我到這裡工作

◎如果可以換工作，我想去_____（公司 / 地方）工作。

原因 (yuányīn, reason)

- (1) _____離我家很近，_____。
- (2) _____的工作比較_____。
- (3) 那個_____發展得相當好，_____。
- (4) 到_____工作，有機會認識 / 了解_____。
- (5) 在_____我可以學到_____。
- (6) _____有很多外國的分公司，有機會_____。
- (7) 在_____工作對我的未來_____。



Lesson

05

烏龍茶很香

Oolong Tea Is Very Aromatic

Learning Objectives

Topic: Drinking tea

By the end of this lesson, you will be able to use Mandarin to

1. Learn about Chinese tea-drinking customs.
2. Enumerate basic facts about tea.
3. Describe the taste of tea.



Lesson 05 烏龍茶很香



課文 Text

(王_王明_明文_文約_約高_高莉_莉亞_亞見_見面_面)



高_高莉_莉亞_亞，妳_妳最_最近_近忙_忙嗎_嗎？想_想約_約妳_妳見_見面_面。
Gāo Lìyǎ, nǐ zuìjìn máng ma? Xiǎng yuē nǐ jiànmiàn

聊_聊聊_聊天_天。
liáoliáotiān.



最_最近_近沒_沒有_有以_以前_前那_那麼_麼忙_忙了_了。後_後天_天是_是
Zuìjìn méiyǒu yǐqián nàme máng le. Hòutiān shì

周_周末_末，我_我跟_跟何_何希_希都_都沒_沒事_事。
zhōumò, wǒ gēn Héxī dōu méi shì.



很_很高_高興_興你_你們_們可_可以_以一_一起_起來_來，就_就來_來我_我家_家。
Hěn gāoxìng nǐmen kěyǐ yìqǐ lái, jiù lái wǒ jiā

喝_喝茶_茶吧_吧！
hē chá ba!

(王_王明_明文_文家_家，有_有人_人敲_敲門_門)



高_高莉_莉亞_亞，何_何希_希，歡_歡迎_迎歡_歡迎_迎，請_請進_進。
Gāo Lìyǎ, Héxī, huānyíng huānyíng, qǐng jìn.



明文，你在喝什麼茶？聞起來很香。
Míngwén, nǐ zài hē shénme chá? Wén qǐlái hěn xiāng.



我喝的是烏龍茶。妳要不要喝喝看？
Wǒ hē de shì wūlóngchá. Nǐ yào bú yào hēhēkàn?



好啊！我還沒喝過臺灣茶，麻煩你給。
Hǎo a! Wǒ hái méi hēguò Táiwān chá, máfán nǐ gěi

我一杯。
wǒ yì bēi.



不麻煩！茶就是要跟朋友一起喝的。
Bù máfán! Chá jiùshì yào gēn péngyǒu yìqǐ hē de.

這裡有烏龍茶跟紅茶，妳想喝哪
Wǒ zhèlǐ yǒu wūlóngchá gēn hóngchá, nǐ xiǎng hē nǎ

一種？
yì zhǒng?



這兩種茶的味，有什麼不同？
Zhè liǎng zhǒng chá de wèidào, yǒu shéme bùtóng?



紅茶喝起來味道比較濃，烏龍茶聞
Hóngchá hē qǐlái wèidào bǐjiào nóng, wūlóngchá wén

起來比較香，可是味道比紅茶淡
qǐlái bǐjiào xiāng, kěshì wèidào bǐ hóngchá dàn

一點。
yìdiǎn.



我跟何希都喜歡比較香的茶，我們
Wǒ gēn Héxī dōu xǐhuān bǐjiào xiāng de chá, wǒmen

選烏龍茶。
xuǎn wūlóngchá.



好。泡茶需要兩分多鐘，請等一下。
Hǎo. Pào chá xūyào liǎng fēn duō zhōng, qǐng děng yí xià.



華^華人^人喝^喝茶^茶好^好像^像什^什麼^麼東^東西^西都^都不^不加^加，
Huárén hē chá hǎoxiàng shénme dōngxi dōu bù jiā,

嗎^嗎？
是^是嗎^嗎？
shì ma?



是^是。妳^妳了^了解^解華^華人^人喝^喝茶^茶的^的習^習慣^慣，我^我就^就，
Shì. Nǐ liǎojiě Huárén hē chá de xíguàn, wǒ jiù

不^不用^用說^說明^明了^了。
búyòng shuōmíng le.



這^這些^些茶^茶的^的名^名字^字真^真有^有趣^趣！你^你是^是在^在哪^哪裡^裡，
Zhèxiē chá de míngzì zhēn yǒuqù! Nǐ shì zài nǎlǐ

買^買的^的？
mǎi de?



這^這些^些茶^茶不^不是^是在^在這^這裡^裡買^買的^的，是^是我^我從^從，
Zhèxiē chá bú shì zài zhèlǐ mǎi de, shì wǒ cóng

台^台灣^灣帶^帶來^來的^的。台^台灣^灣茶^茶的^的品^品質^質非^非常^常好^好，
Táiwān dàilái de. Táiwān chá de pǐnzhí fēicháng hǎo,

妳^妳喝^喝喝^喝看^看就^就知^知道^道了^了。味^味道^道怎^怎麼^麼樣^樣？
nǐ hēhēkàn jiù zhīdào le. Wèidào zěnmeyàng?



嗯^嗯……，喝^喝起^起來^來有^有一^一點^點苦^苦，有^有一^一點^點甜^甜，
En..., hē qílái yǒu yídiǎn kǔ, yǒu yídiǎn tián,

很^很特^特別^別。
hěn tèbié.



這^這次^次妳^妳喝^喝的^的是^是味^味道^道比^比較^較淡^淡，可^可是^是，
Zhè cì nǐ hē de shì wèidào bǐjiào dàn, kěshì

比^比較^較香^香的^的茶^茶，要^要是^是有^有機^機會^會，我^我請^請妳^妳喝^喝，
bǐjiào xiāng de chá, yàoshì yǒu jīhuì, wǒ qǐng nǐ hē

味^味道^道濃^濃一^一點^點的^的東^東方^方美^美人^人茶^茶。
wèidào nóng yídiǎn de dōngfāng měirénchá.

生詞

Vocabulary

1. 烏 ^ㄨ 龍 ^{ㄌㄨㄥˊ} 茶 ^{ㄔㄚˊ}	wūlóngchá	N	oolong tea
2. 香 ^{ㄒㄧㄤ}	xiāng	Vs	aromatic, fragrant
3. 後 ^{ㄏㄡˋ} 天 ^{ㄊㄧㄢ}	hòutiān	N	the day after tomorrow
4. 聞 ^{ㄨㄣˊ}	wén	V	smell, sniff
5. 麻 ^{ㄇㄚˊ} 煩 ^{ㄈㄢˊ}	máfán	Vs	put someone to the trouble of...
6. 味 ^{ㄨㄟˋ} 道 ^{ㄉㄠˋ}	wèidào	N	flavor, taste
7. 不 ^{ㄨˋ} 同 ^{ㄊㄨㄥˊ}	bùtóng	N	different
8. 濃 ^{ㄋㄨㄥˊ}	nóng	Vs	thick, rich, concentrated
9. 淡 ^{ㄉㄢˋ}	dàn	Vs	light, bland, diluted
10. 選 ^{ㄒㄩㄢˋ}	xuǎn	V	choose, select
11. 泡 ^{ㄆㄠˋ}	pào	V	steep, soak
12. 華 ^{ㄏㄨㄚˊ} 人 ^{ㄖㄣˊ}	Huárén	N	Chinese people as an ethnic group
13. 習 ^{ㄒㄧˊ} 慣 ^{ㄍㄨㄢˋ}	xíguàn	N	custom, habit, mores
14. 不 ^{ㄨˋ} 用 ^{ㄩㄥˋ}	bùyòng	Vaux	no need to...
15. 說 ^{ㄕㄨㄟˊ} 明 ^{ㄇㄧㄥˊ}	shuōmíng	V	explain
16. 有 ^{ㄩˇ} 趣 ^{ㄑㄩˋ}	yǒuqù	Vs	interesting
17. 品 ^{ㄆㄧㄣˇ} 質 ^{ㄓˋ}	pǐnzhí	N	quality
18. 嗯 ^ㄣ	en	Ptc	Uh...



Lesson 05 烏龍茶很香

19. 苦 く	kǔ	Vs	bitter
20. 甜 tián	tián	Vs	sweet
21. 特別 tebié	tèbié	Vs	particular
22. 要是 yàoshi	yàoshi	Conj	if...
23. 東方美人茶 dōngfāng měirénchá	dōngfāng měirénchá	N	dongfang meiren tea, white-tip oolong tea, champagne oolong tea

短語

Phrases

24. 喝茶 hē chá	hē chá	drink tea
------------------------------	--------	-----------

語法

Grammar

1

A 沒有 méiyǒu B 那麼 nàme / 這麼 zhème

The sentence pattern 「A 沒有 méiyǒu B 那麼 nàme / 這麼 zhème.....」 is placed in front of an adjective to indicate that A does not measure up to B in terms of the criterion described by the adjective.

Examples:

(1) 我現在沒有以前那麼忙。

I am not as busy now as I was before.

(2) 烏龍茶沒有紅茶那麼濃。

Oolong tea is not as rich as black tea.

(1) 開車沒有坐飛機那麼快。

Kāi chē méiyǒu zuò fēijī nàme kuài.

Driving is not as fast as flying there.



(2) 我知道烤火雞沒有做沙拉那麼輕鬆。

Wǒ zhīdào kǎo huǒjī méiyǒu zuò shālā nàme qīngsōng.

I know that roasting a turkey is not as carefree [a task] as making a salad.

(3) 那裡的海邊沒有這裡的這麼漂亮。

Nàlǐ de hǎibiān méiyǒu zhèlǐ de zhème piàoliàng.

The seashore there is not as pretty as it is here.

(4) 王明文的工作經驗沒有高莉亞的那麼多。

Wáng Míngwén de gōngzuò jīngyàn méiyǒu Gāo Lìyǎ de nàme duō.

Wang Mingwen does not have as much work experience as Gloria does.

Exercise

After looking at the illustration, use the “A 沒有 *méiyǒu* B 那麼 *nàme*” sentence pattern to render each sentence using the words supplied.

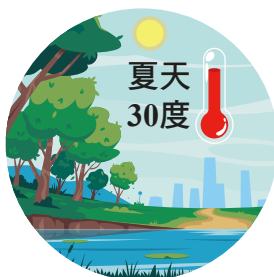
1



_____。

(濃 / 淡 / 苦 / 好喝)

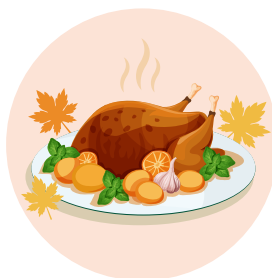
2



_____。

(熱 / 涼快 / 舒服)

3



_____。

(難 / 麻煩)



Lesson 05 烏龍茶很香

4



_____.
(跑得 / 快)

5



_____.
(有意思 / 輕鬆 / 好玩)

2

VV 看 kàn to try

Single-syllable action verbs when reduplicated and followed by 看 kàn in spoken phrases mean “to try V-ing.” Single-syllable verbs often so used include 吃 chī “eat,” 喝 hē “drink,” 做 zuò “do, make,” 聽 tīng “hear, listen,” 學 xué “learn,” 寫 xiě “write,” 穿 chuān “wear,” 逛 guàng “stroll, visit,” or 打 dǎ “hit, strike, beat,” etc.

Examples:

- (1) 這盤沙拉看起來很好吃，我想吃吃看。

This plate of salad looks delicious. I want to try [eating] it.

- (2) 這種咖啡很香，你要不要喝喝看？

This kind of coffee is very aromatic. Do you want to try [drinking] a cup?

- (1) 果汁跟烏龍茶我都想喝喝看。

Guǒzhī gēn wūlóngchá wǒ dōu xiǎng hēhēkàn.

I want to try [drinking] both fruit juice and oolong tea.

- (2) 這件衣服的樣子很好看，你穿穿看。

Zhè jiàn yīfú de yàngzi hěn hǎokàn, nǐ chuānchuānkàn.

This clothing is good-looking. Try wearing it.



- (3) 高莉亞教了我怎麼烤火雞，我要做做看。

Gāo Lìyǎ jiāole wǒ zěnmē kǎo huǒjī, wǒ yào zuòzuòkàn.

Gloria taught me how to roast a turkey, I want to try doing it.

- (4) 張家安告訴我日文也有漢字，所以我打算學學看。

Zhāng Jiā'ān gàosù wǒ Rìwén yě yǒu hànzì, suǒyǐ wǒ dǎsuàn xuéxuékàn.

Joann Zhang told me Japanese also has Chinese characters, so I plan to try learning it.

Exercise

Use verb reduplication + 看 *kàn* to complete the following sentence.

1



：聽說張家安唱歌唱得很好聽。



：哇！我想_____。（聽）

2



：那家麵包店的麵包非常好吃，妳可以去買一個。



：好，有機會我要_____。（吃）

3



：明文，你會做牛肉麵嗎？



：我不會做，但是我媽媽教過我，所以想_____

_____。（做）

4



：超級市場附近有一家新的飲料店，好像有烏龍茶。



：太好了，這個週末我們_____。（喝）



Lesson 05 烏龍茶很香

5



：用電腦打中文不難。



：太好了，_____。（學/打）

3 Separable Verbs

One category of Mandarin verb, the separable verb, consists of a Verb + Noun that behave like a Verb + Object. Between the two parts of this verb structure other elements may be inserted. Various separable verbs have been introduced in Book 1 through Book 3 of this textbook series, such as 吃飯 *chī fàn* “eat a meal,” 喝茶 *hē chá* “drink tea,” 學中文 *xué Zhōngwén* “learn Mandarin,” 唱歌 *chàng gē* “sing [a song],” 做飯 *zuò fàn* “cook [a meal],” 跑步 *pǎo bù* “run, jog [a course of steps],” 看電視 *kàn diànshì* “watch television,” 上班 *shàng bān* “be at work [on duty],” 上課 *shàng kè* “attend class,” 上網 *shàng wǎng* “be online,” 照相 *zhào xiàng* “to photograph [a likeness],” 見面 *jiàn miàn* “to meet [a person],” 畢業 *bì yè* “complete [a course of study],” 結婚 *jiéhūn* “get married [be joined in marriage],” etc.

The elements that may be inserted between the Verb and Noun include:

(1) Particle “了”

他吃了飯以後，就去上班了。

After eating a meal, he went to work.

(2) Number + Measure word

他下午喝了兩杯咖啡。

He drank two cups of coffee in the afternoon.

(3) Duration

張家安每天上八個小時班。

Joann Zhang works eight hours a day.

(4) Question word 什麼

你在喝什麼茶？

What tea are you drinking?

(5) Modifiers

高莉亞每個星期都去上中文課。

Gloria goes to [attend] Mandarin class every week.



Exercise

Separate the Verb and Noun elements of the following separable verbs and insert another element to form a reasonable sentence.

1 上課

➡ 我上了三個小時課。

➡ 你喜歡上什麼課？



2 做飯

➡ _____
(了 / 兩個小時)

3 上網

➡ _____
(了 / 一個鐘頭)

4 喝咖啡

➡ _____
(了 / 一杯 / 冰)

5 買菜

➡ _____
(了 / 很多 / 什麼)

6 生病

➡ _____
(了 / 一天)

7 寫字

➡ _____
(了 / 一百多個)



Lesson 05 烏龍茶很香

8 見面



(了 / 一次)

9 照相



(V 了 N, 就……)

10 畢業



(V 了 N, 就……)

綜合活動

Classroom Activities



1. Read aloud



(王明文約高莉亞見面)

王明文：高莉亞，妳最近忙嗎？想約妳見面聊聊天。

高莉亞：最近沒有以前那麼忙了。後天是週末，我跟何希都沒事。

王明文：很高興你們可以一起來，就來我家喝茶吧！

(王明文家，有人敲門)

王明文：高莉亞，何希，歡迎歡迎，請進。

高莉亞：明文，你在喝什麼茶？聞起來很香。

王明文：我喝的是烏龍茶。妳要不要喝喝看？

高莉亞：好啊！我還沒喝過臺灣茶，麻煩你給我一杯。

王明文：不麻煩！茶就是要跟朋友一起喝的。我這裡有烏龍茶跟紅茶，妳想喝哪一種？

高莉亞：這兩種茶的味道，有什麼不同？

王明文：紅茶喝起來味道比較濃，烏龍茶聞起來比較香，可是味道比紅茶淡一點。

高莉亞：我跟何希都喜歡比較香的茶，我們選烏龍茶。

王明文：好。泡茶需要兩分多鐘，請等一下。

高莉亞：華人喝茶好像什麼東西都不加，是嗎？

王明文：是。妳了解華人喝茶的習慣，我就不用說明了。

高莉亞：這些茶的名字真有趣！你是在哪裡買的？

王明文：這些茶不是在這裡買的，是我從臺灣帶來的。臺灣茶的品質非常好，妳喝喝看就知道了。味道怎麼樣？

高莉亞：嗯……，喝起來有一點苦，有一點甜，很特別。

王明文：這次妳喝的是味道比較淡，可是比較香的茶，要是有機會，我請妳喝味道濃一點的東方美人茶。

2. Fill in the blanks

Based on the preceding dialogue, fill in the missing words of each sentence with the appropriate characters or pinyin.

（王明文約高莉亞見面）

王明文：高莉亞，妳_____忙嗎？想_____妳見面聊聊天。

高莉亞：最近_____以前那麼忙了。_____天是週末，我跟何希都沒事。

王明文：很高興你們可以一起來，就來我家喝_____吧！

（王明文家，有人敲門）

王明文：高莉亞，何希，歡迎歡迎，請_____。

高莉亞：明文，你在_____什麼茶？_____起來很_____。

王明文：我喝的是烏龍茶。妳要不要喝喝看？

高莉亞：好啊！我_____沒喝過臺灣茶，_____你給我一_____。

王明文：不麻煩！茶就是要跟朋友_____喝的。我這裡有烏龍茶跟紅茶，妳_____喝哪一_____？

高莉亞：這兩種茶的_____，有什麼_____？





王明文：紅茶喝起來味道比較_____，烏龍茶聞起來比較香，可是味道_____紅茶_____一點。

高莉亞：我跟何希都喜歡比較香的茶，我們_____烏龍茶。

王明文：好。_____茶需要兩分多鐘，請等一下。

高莉亞：華人喝茶好像什麼東西都不_____，是嗎？

王明文：是。妳_____華人喝茶的_____，我就不用_____了。

高莉亞：這些茶的名字真_____！你是在哪裡買的？

王明文：這些茶不是在這裡買的，是我從臺灣_____來的。臺灣茶的_____非常好，妳喝喝看就_____了。味道怎麼樣？

高莉亞：嗯……，喝起來有一點_____，有一點_____，很_____。

王明文：這次妳喝的是味道比較淡，可是比較香的茶，_____有機會，我請妳喝味道濃一點的東方美人茶。

3. Choose your favorite beverage and then tell everyone about it according to the pattern of the following sentences.

① 我最喜歡的飲料是_____。

② 這種飲料裡面有_____。

③ 這種飲料的味道喝起來_____（濃、淡、酸、甜、苦、辣）。

④ 我_____（每天 / 每個星期）都要喝_____杯。

⑤ 我喜歡的原因（*yuányīn*, reason）是_____。

4. Make a cup of a beverage for yourself! Use the ingredients in the illustrations below to make a particular beverage, then fill in the blanks of the following sentences to introduce your beverage to everyone.

			
茶葉（ <i>cháyè</i> , tea leafs）	茶包（ <i>chábāo</i> , tea bag）	咖啡	牛奶
			
糖	熱水	涼水（ <i>liángshuǐ</i> , cold water）	冰塊（ <i>bīngkuài</i> , ice cubes）
			
水果	酒	汽水	果汁

① 我做的飲料是_____。（飲料名字）

② 我在_____（飲料）裡面加了_____。

③ 這杯_____（飲料）的味道_____，有一點_____，有一點_____。

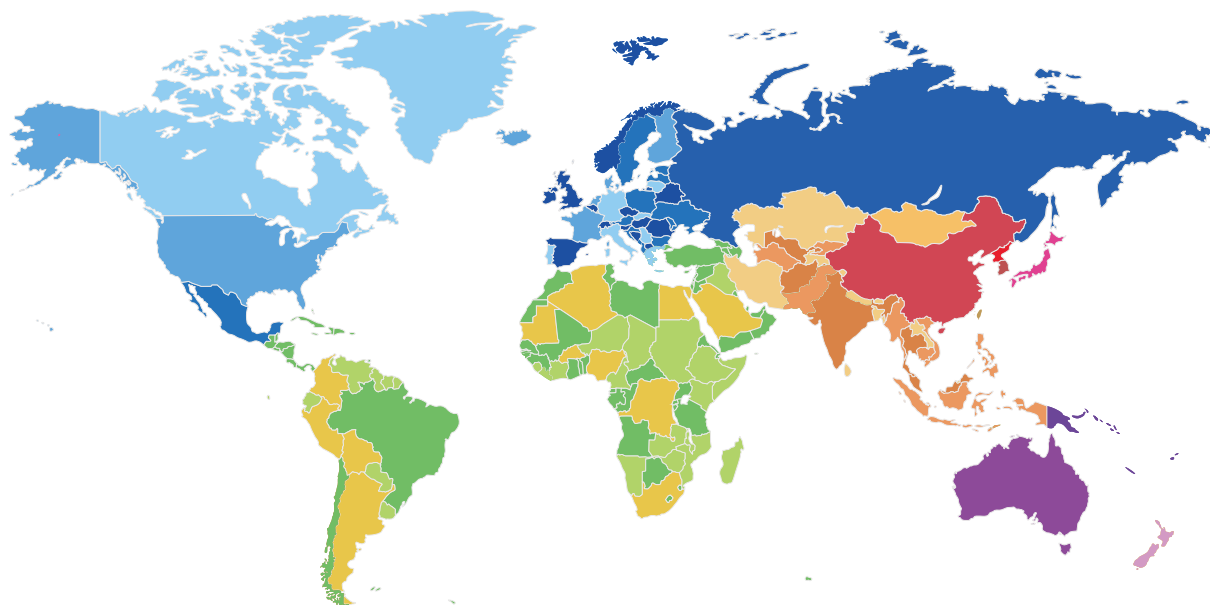
④ 我做這樣的飲料，因為_____。

⑤ 要是有機會，我也想喝喝看_____。



Lesson 05 烏龍茶很香

5. Refer to the world map below to find which countries enjoy drinking tea and what kind of tea they customarily drink. Then fill in the table with your findings and indicate whether you have tried [drinking] that particular kind of tea.



	例：	你知道的 / 你查到的
喜歡喝茶的國家	日本	
茶的名字？	綠茶 (lǜchá, green tea)	
喝茶的方法？	用熱水泡茶	
什麼時候喝？	什麼時候都可以喝	
茶的味道？	有一點苦	
喝過嗎？	喝過了	
喜歡嗎？	喜歡	

Supplementary vocabulary

英國	Yīngguó	United Kingdom	巴拉圭	Bālāguī	Paraguay
印度	Yìndù	India	阿根廷	Āgēntíng	Argentina
泰國	Tàiguó	Thailand	土耳其	Tǔ'ěrqí	Turkey
越南	Yuènnán	Vietnam	肯亞	Kěnyǎ	Kenya

Lesson

06

同事對我很好

My Colleagues Are Very Good to Me

Learning Objectives

Topic: Getting along with others

By the end of this lesson, you will be able to use Mandarin to

1. Describe your work situation.
2. Describe the personality of another person.
3. Describe how you get along with colleagues.
4. Express solicitude for others.



課文

Text



喂，家^家文^文，是^是我^我。爸^爸媽^媽都^都好^好嗎^嗎？
Wéi, Jiāwén, shì wǒ. Bà mā dōu hǎo ma?



我^我們^們一^一切^切都^都好^好。你^你呢^呢？工^工作^作怎^怎麼^麼樣^樣？
Wǒmen yíqiè dōu hǎo. Nǐ ne? Gōngzuò zěnmeyàng?



我^我剛^剛來^來的^的時^時候^候很^很忙^忙，工^工作^作常^常常^常沒^沒
Wǒ gāng lái de shíhòu hěn máng, gōngzuò chángcháng méi
做^做完^完。不^不過^過，現^現在^在已^已經^經適^適應^應了^了。
zuòwán. Búguò, xiànzài yǐjīng shìyìng le.



哇^哇！你^你的^的壓^壓力^力一^一定^定很^很大^大。
Wa! Nǐ de yālì yíding hěn dà.



還^還好^好同^同事^事們^們都^都很^很熱^熱心^心，願^願意^意幫^幫我^我忙^忙。
Háihǎo tóngshìmen dōu hěn rèxīn, yuànyì bāng wǒ máng.



聽^聽起^起來^來你^你的^的同^同事^事對^對你^你很^很好^好啊^啊！
Tīng qǐlái nǐ de tóngshì duì nǐ hěn hǎo a!



是^是啊^啊！如^如果^果我^我有^有聽^聽不^不懂^懂或^或看^看不^不懂^懂的^的
Shì a! Rúguǒ wǒ yǒu tīng bù dǒng huò kàn bù dǒng de

資 料_{カ、}，也_セ都_カ是_ハ同_チ事_ハ幫_ウ忙_ト一_一起_ク解_ハ決_ハ的_カ。
 zīliào, yě dōu shì tóngshì bāngmáng yìqǐ jiějué de.



你_ニ的_カ部_ウ門_ハ有_ハ多_カ少_カ同_チ事_ハ？
 Nǐ de bùmén yǒu duōshǎo tóngshì?



有_ハ二_ニ十_ニ幾_ニ位_ハ同_チ事_ハ，大_カ家_ハ都_カ很_ハ年_ニ輕_ニ。
 Yǒu èrshíjǐ wèi tóngshì. Dàjiā dōu hěn niánqīng.

虽_ス然_ニ個_ハ性_ハ不_ハ同_ハ，有_ハ的_ハ人_ハ活_ハ潑_ハ，有_ハ的_ハ人_ハ。
 Suīrán gèxìng bùtóng, yǒude rén huópō, yǒude rén

亲_ニ切_ハ，但_カ是_ハ都_カ很_ハ好_ハ相_ハ處_ハ。
 qīnqiè, dànshì dōu hěn hǎo xiāngchǔ.



你_ニ對_ハ現_ハ在_ハ的_ハ工_ハ作_ハ很_ハ滿_ハ意_ハ，是_ハ吧_ハ？
 Nǐ duì xiànzài de gōngzuò hěn mǎnyì, shì ba?



因_ハ為_ハ這_ニ裡_ハ的_ハ工_ハ作_ハ環_ハ境_ハ很_ハ好_ハ，同_チ事_ハ們_ハ。
 Yīnwèi zhèlǐ de gōngzuò huánjìng hěn hǎo, tóngshìmen

都_カ很_ハ認_ハ真_ハ，也_セ會_ハ互_ハ相_ハ幫_ウ忙_ト，所_ハ以_ハ在_ハ。
 dōu hěn rènzhēn, yě huì hùxiāng bāngmáng, suǒyǐ zài

這_ニ裡_ハ工_ハ作_ハ很_ハ開_ハ心_ハ。
 zhèlǐ gōngzuò hěn kāixīn.



我_ハ覺_ハ得_ハ你_ニ決_ハ定_ハ到_ハ美_ハ國_ハ工_ハ作_ハ是_ハ對_ハ的_ハ。
 Wǒ juéde nǐ juéding dào Měiguó gōngzuò shì duì de.



我_ハ來_ハ這_ニ裡_ハ以_ハ後_ハ，得_ハ到_ハ很_ハ多_ハ經_ハ驗_ハ，相_ハ信_ハ。
 Wǒ lái zhèlǐ yǐhòu, dédào hěn duō jīngyàn, xiāngxìn

對_ハ我_ハ的_ハ未_ハ來_ハ一_ハ定_ハ有_ハ好_ハ處_ハ。
 duì wǒ de wèilái yíding yǒu hǎochù.



爸_ハ媽_ハ要_ハ我_ハ告_ハ訴_ハ你_ニ，好_ハ好_ハ地_ハ照_ハ顧_ハ自_ハ己_ハ。
 Bà mā yào wǒ gàosù nǐ, hàohǎo de zhàogù zìjǐ.



請_ハ爸_ハ媽_ハ放_ハ心_ハ，我_ハ會_ハ照_ハ顧_ハ自_ハ己_ハ的_ハ。
 Qǐng bà mā fàngxīn, wǒ huì zhàogù zìjǐ de.



Lesson 06 同事對我很好

生詞

Vocabulary

1. 一切 ^{一_ㄅ切_ㄑ}	yíqiè	N	everything, all
2. 完 ^{完_{ㄨㄢˊ}}	wán	Ptc	complete, finish [an action]
3. 不過 ^{不_ㄅ過_ㄉ}	búguò	Conj	however
4. 適應 ^{適_ㄊ應_ㄩ}	shìyìng	V	adapt, acclimate to [a situation]
5. 壓力 ^{壓_ㄢ力_ㄌ}	yālì	N	pressure
6. 還好 ^{還_ㄟ好_ㄠ}	háihǎo	Adv	fortunately
7. 熱心 ^{熱_ㄣ心_ㄒ}	rèxīn	Vs	enthusiastic
8. 願意 ^{願_ㄩ意_ㄩ}	yuànyì	Vaux	willing [to do something]
9. 懂 ^{懂_ㄉ}	dǒng	V	understand
10. 資料 ^{資_ㄘ料_ㄌ}	zīliào	N	data, material
11. 解決 ^{解_ㄐ決_ㄑ}	jiějué	V	solve
12. 部門 ^{部_ㄅ門_ㄇ}	bùmén	N	department
13. 年輕 ^{年_ㄋ輕_ㄑ}	niánqīng	Vs	young
14. 個性 ^{個_ㄍ性_ㄒ}	gèxìng	N	personality
15. 活潑 ^{活_ㄏ潑_ㄆ}	huópō	Vs	lively, vivacious
16. 親切 ^{親_ㄑ切_ㄑ}	qīnqiè	Vs	kind, nice
17. 相處 ^{相_ㄒ處_ㄘ}	xiāngchǔ	V	get along [with someone]
18. 滿意 ^{滿_ㄇ意_ㄩ}	mǎnyì	Vs	satisfy

19. 環 ^{ㄏㄨㄢˊ} 境 ^{ㄐㄩㄥˋ}	huánjìng	N	environment
20. 認 ^{ㄖèn} 真 ^{ㄓㄣ}	rènzhēn	Vs	earnest, ardent
21. 互 ^{ㄏù} 相 ^{ㄒㄩㄤ}	hùxiāng	Adv	mutually, each other
22. 得 ^{ㄉé} 到 ^{ㄊㄠˋ}	dédào	V	get, receive, obtain
23. 相 ^{ㄒㄩㄤ} 信 ^{ㄒìn}	xiāngxìn	V	believe, have faith in, accept as true
24. 好 ^{ㄏǎo} 處 ^{ㄘㄨˋ}	hǎochù	N	advantage, benefit, good point
25. 告 ^{ㄍào} 訴 ^{ㄙù}	gàosù	V	tell, inform
26. 照 ^{ㄓào} 顧 ^{ㄍù}	zhàogù	V	take care of, look after [someone]
27. 放 ^{ㄈàng} 心 ^{ㄒīn}	fàngxīn	Vs	rest assured, be at ease [about something]

短語

Phrases

28. 沒 ^{ㄇéi} 做 ^{ㄗㄨㄛˋ} 完 ^{ㄨㄢˊ}	méi zuòwán	not [yet] finished, not completed
29. 聽 ^{ㄊīng} 不 ^{ㄅㄨˋ} 懂 ^{ㄉㄨㄥˇ}	tīng bù dǒng	cannot understand [what is said]
30. 看 ^{ㄎàn} 不 ^{ㄅㄨˋ} 懂 ^{ㄉㄨㄥˇ}	kàn bù dǒng	cannot understand [what is read]
31. 有 ^{ㄩˇ} 的 ^{ㄉㄜˊ}	yǒude	some [N]
32. 好 ^{ㄏǎo} 好 ^{ㄏǎo} 地 ^{ㄉㄜˊ}	hǎohǎo de	properly, thoroughly, really

補充生詞

Supplementary Vocabulary

33. 本 ^{ㄅㄣˇ}	běn	M	[measure word for] books
34. 慢 ^{ㄇàn}	màn	Vs	slow



語法 Grammar

1

Verb Complement 完 wán

“to finish [or not have finished] V-ing”

Appending the complement (particle) 完 wán to an action verb indicates completion of the action. To affirm completion, add the particle 了 le after 完 wán, as in example (1) below. To express that the action is not [yet] completed, add 沒 méi before the action verb + 完 wán, as in example (2) below.

Examples:

(1) A：你今天的工作做完了嗎？

Have you completed [doing] today's work?

B：我做完了。

I have completed [doing] it.

(2) A：你烤的火雞吃完了嗎？

Have you finished eating the roast turkey you made?

B：火雞太大了，我們沒吃完。

The turkey is too big. We have not [yet] finished eating it.

(1) 他吃完了三明治，又點了一塊蛋糕。

Tā chīwán le sānmíngzhì, yòu diǎnle yí kuài dàngāo.

He finished the sandwich and [then] ordered a piece of cake.



(2) A：你什麼時候去上班？

Nǐ shénme shíhòu qù shàngbān?

When will you be going to work?

B：我喝完了咖啡就出門。

Wǒ hēwán le kāfēi jiù chūmén.

After I finish my coffee, I will be heading out the door.

(3) 我工作很忙，所以還沒看完那本書。

Wǒ gōngzuò hěn máng, suǒyǐ hái méi kànwán nà běn shū.

I am very busy with work, so have not yet finished reading that book.

(4) A：你們的南瓜派賣完了嗎？

Nǐmen de nánguāpài màiwán le ma?

Have you sold [out] all of your pumpkin pies?

B：沒賣完，還有一個。

Méi màiwán, hái yǒu yí ge.

Not completely, there still is one left.



Exercise

Use the complement 完 *wán* to complete the following sentences.

- 1 你昨天買的水果，_____了嗎？（吃）
- 2 那些電影，你_____了嗎？（看）
- 3 雖然有三瓶啤酒，但是他都_____了。（喝）
- 4 老師上星期說要寫五十個字，太多了，我還_____。
（寫）
- 5 爸爸買的那本書，他已經_____了。（看）

2

Verb Complement 懂 *dǒng*

to understand or comprehend as a result of Ving

Appending the complement 懂 *dǒng* to the verb 聽 *tīng* “listen” or 看 *kàn* “read” indicates whether or not the act of listening or reading has resulted in understanding of what has been said or written. To respond in the affirmative, add 了 *le* after the complement 懂 *dǒng* as in example (1) below. Adding 沒 *méi* before the V + 懂 *dǒng* indicates that understanding did not result from the action of listening or reading.

Examples:

- (1) 我聽懂了他說的法文。

I understood what he was saying in French.

- (2) A：你看懂這些字了嗎？

Could you [read and] grasp what these characters mean?

B：我沒看懂。

I could not make any sense of them.

- (1) 他看懂了老師寫的字。

Tā kàndǒng le lǎoshī xiě de zì.

He understood the characters that the teacher wrote.

- (2) 那位同學唱的日文歌，我沒聽懂。

Nà wèi tóngxué chàng de Rìwén gē, wǒ méi tīngdǒng.

I did not understand the Japanese song that classmate sang.

日文歌





Lesson 06 同事對我很好

(3) A：老師今天教的中文，你都聽懂了嗎？

Lǎoshī jīntiān jiāo de Zhōngwén, nǐ dōu tīngdǒng le ma?

Did you understand all the Mandarin that the teacher taught today?

B：有的聽懂了，有的沒聽懂。

Yǒude tīngdǒng le, yǒude méi tīngdǒng.

Some of it I understood, some of it I did not.

(4) A：那本介紹茶的書，你看懂了嗎？

Nà běn jièshào chá de shū, nǐ kàndǒng le ma?

Did you understand that book about tea?

B：我看懂了。

Wǒ kàndǒng le.

I understood it.



Exercise

Use the complement 懂 *dǒng* to complete the following sentences.

- 1 林老師跟你說的中文，你_____嗎？（聽）
- 2 那些資料我得再看看，昨天我_____。（看）
- 3 你在網路上看怎麼烤火雞，你_____嗎？（看）
- 4 那些話，我第一次沒聽懂，第二次就_____。（聽）
- 5 同事跟我說明了三次，可是我還_____。（聽）

3

Potential Capability with 得 *de* or 不 *bù*

Inserting 得 *de* or 不 *bù* between an action verb and its resultative or directional complement expresses whether the result of the action is potentially attainable. Example (1) below indicates that A wishes to know the capability of B to understand Mandarin. The response of B in this example is affirmative. The response of B to the question in example (2) is negative.

The response of B in example (3) affirms being capable to do a portion of what is asked while conceding inability to do the remainder.

Examples:

V + 得 / 不 + complement

(1) A：你聽得懂中文嗎？

Do you understand Mandarin?

B：我聽得懂中文。

Yes, I understand Mandarin.

(2) A：你做得完這麼多工作嗎？

Are you able to complete this much work?

B：工作太多了，我一個人做不完。

There is too much work, I cannot finish it by myself.

(3) A：你看得懂看不懂這些資料？

Can you figure out what this data means?

B：有的看得懂，有的看不懂。

Some of it I understand, some of it I do not.

(1) 他看不懂「東方美人茶」這幾個字。

Tā kàn bù dǒng “dōngfāng měirénchá” zhè jǐ ge zì.

He cannot make sense of the characters for “dongfang meiren tea.”

(2) 這碗湯太多了，我喝不完。

Zhè wǎn tāng tài duō le, wǒ hē bù wán.

This bowl of soup is too much. I cannot finish it.

(3) A：快要下班了，你做得完這些工作嗎？

Kuài yào xiàbān le, nǐ zuò de wán zhèxiē gōngzuò ma?

It is almost time to stop work, can you finish these tasks?

B：還有半個小時，我做得完。

Hái yǒu bàn ge xiǎoshí, wǒ zuò de wán.

There still is half an hour left. I can finish doing them.

(4) A：你聽得懂那個法國人說的話嗎？

Nǐ tīng de dǒng nà ge Fǎguó rén shuō de huà ma?

Can you comprehend what that French person is saying?

B：太難了，我聽不懂。

Tài nán le, wǒ tīng bù dǒng.

It is too hard. I cannot understand [what is being said].





Lesson 06 同事對我很好

Exercise

Select 完 *wán* or 懂 *dǒng* as appropriate to fill in the blank of each sentence.

- 1 「贏」這個字，我看了很久，還是看不_____。
- 2 這裡有一大盤雞肉沙拉，你吃得_____嗎？
- 3 今天下班以前，你的工作做得_____嗎？
- 4 王明文跟同事說中文，可是同事聽不_____。
- 5 我喜歡烏龍茶，這杯茶我喝得_____。
- 6 我沒時間，今天看不_____這個電影。



4 有的……，有的…… yǒude..., yǒude... some..., some...

The pattern “有的 *yǒude*……，有的 *yǒude*……” contrasts two aspects or subsets of an entity or action to provide richer detail. They may at times comprise its entirety, but not necessarily so. Nouns that follow 有的 *yǒude*……，有的 *yǒude*…… are often people, times or places.

Examples:

- (1) 我的部門有五位同事，有的人喜歡喝咖啡，有的人喜歡喝茶。

My department has five colleagues, some of whom like to drink coffee, some of whom like to drink tea.

- (2) 週末我常去運動，有的時候去打球，有的時候去跑步。

I often go to exercise on weekends. Sometimes I go play ball, sometimes I go jogging.

- (1) 海邊人很多，有的人在晒太陽，有的人在游泳。

Hǎibiān rén hěn duō, yǒude rén zài shài tàiyáng, yǒude rén zài yóuyǒng.

There are many people at the seashore, some are sunbathing, some are swimming.

- (2) 昨天下雨了，有的地方雨很大，有的地方雨很小。

Zuótiān xià yǔ le, yǒude dìfāng yǔ hěn dà, yǒude dìfāng yǔ hěn xiǎo.

It rained yesterday. Some places the rain was heavy, some places it was light.

(3) 不同的茶，味道也不同，有的茶很濃，有的茶比較淡。

Bùtóng de chá, wèidào yě bùtóng, yǒude chá hěn nóng, yǒude chá bǐjiào dàn.

Different teas also vary in flavor. Some are quite robust; while some are comparatively bland.

(4) 高莉亞：妳早飯都吃麵包嗎？

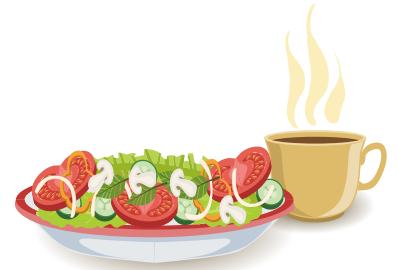
Nǐ zǎofàn dōu chī miànbāo ma?

Do you always eat bread for breakfast?

麗莎：有的時候吃麵包，有的時候吃沙拉。

Yǒude shíhòu chī miànbāo, yǒude shíhòu chī shālā.

Sometimes I eat bread, sometimes I eat a salad.



Exercise

Look at each illustration and use the pattern “有的……，有的……” to complete the sentence beneath it.

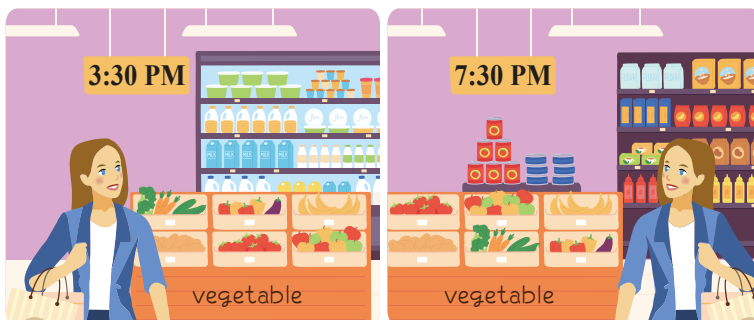
1



➡ 這家百貨公司裡面有的人在_____，

有的人在_____。

2



麗莎：妳平常什麼時候去買菜？

高莉亞：我有的時候_____，有的時候_____。



Lesson **06** 同事對我很好

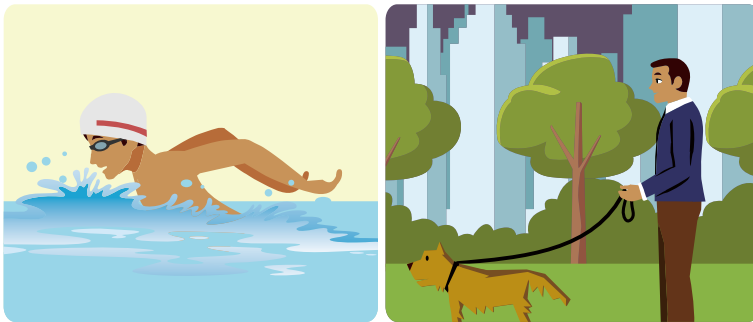
3



杜 翔：這些啤酒都好喝嗎？

張家安：不，有的_____，有的_____。

4



王明文：下班以後，你常做什麼？

何 希：我有的_____，
有的_____。

5



王明文：高莉亞，妳吃過這些菜嗎？

高莉亞：_____，_____。

5

VsVs 地 de + V reduplicated state verbs comprising adverbial phrase of intensified degree

Reduplicated state verbs placed before a verb separated by the particle 地 *de* become an adverb of intensified degree modifying the verb. The most common state verbs are 好 *hǎo* and 慢 *màn*.
Examples:

(1) 大家都會好好地照顧家人。

Everyone would take great care of family members.

(2) 我好好地了解那家公司以後，再告訴你。

Once I really understand that company, I will tell you.

(1) 哥哥最近工作壓力很大，他得好好地休息。

Gēge zuìjìn gōngzuò yālì hěn dà, tā dēi hǎohǎo de xiūxi.

My older brother has been under a lot of pressure at work recently, [so] he needs a good rest.

(2) 我們明天見面以後，好好地聊聊吧。

Wǒmen míngtiān jiànmiàn yǐhòu, hǎohǎo de liáliáo ba.

After we meet up tomorrow, let's have a really good chat.

(3) 高莉亞下個星期請同事吃飯，這個週末得好好地準備一下。

Gāo Lìyǎ xià ge xīngqī qǐng tóngshì chī fàn, zhè ge zhōumò dēi hǎohǎo de zhǔnbèi yíxià.

Gloria has asked a colleague over for a meal next week, [so] she must really prepare [for it.]

(4) 下雨了，我們應該慢慢地走。

Xià yǔ le, wǒmen yīnggāi mànman de zǒu.

It has started to rain, [so] we should walk really slowly.

Exercise

Use the “VsVs 地 + V” pattern to complete the following sentences.

1



：我頭痛，有一點發燒，好像生病了。



：你快一點去看醫生，然後_____

_____（好 / 休息）。



Lesson 06 同事對我很好

2



：畢業以後你要找什麼工作？



：我還沒決定，得_____。
_____（好 / 想一想）。

3



：這些字很難寫，妳要多寫幾次。



：好，我會_____。（好 / 練習）

4



：天氣不好，開始下雪了。



：沒關係，我們_____。（慢 / 開車）

5



：茶是剛泡的，非常熱。



：沒問題，我會_____。（慢 / 喝）



綜合活動

Classroom Activities

1. Read aloud

王明文：喂，家文，是我。爸媽都好嗎？

王家文：我們一切都好。你呢？工作怎麼樣？

王明文：我剛來的時候很忙，工作常常沒做完。不過，現在已經適應了。

王家文：哇！你的壓力一定很大。

王明文：還好同事們都很熱心，願意幫我忙。

王家文：聽起來你的同事對你很好啊！

王明文：是啊！如果我有聽不懂或看不懂的資料，也都是同事幫忙一起解決的。

王家文：你的部門有多少同事？

王明文：有二十幾位同事，大家都很年輕。雖然個性不同，有的人活潑，有的人親切，但是都很好相處。

王家文：你對現在的工作很滿意，是吧？

王明文：因為這裡的工作環境很好，同事們都很認真，也會互相幫忙，所以在這裡工作很開心。

王家文：我覺得你決定到美國工作是對的。

王明文：我來這裡以後，得到很多經驗，相信對我的未來一定有好處。

王家文：爸媽要我告訴你，好好地照顧自己。

王明文：請爸媽放心，我會照顧自己的。



2. Fill in the blanks

Based on the preceding dialogue, fill in the missing words of each sentence with the appropriate characters or pinyin.

王明文：喂，家文，是我。爸媽都好嗎？

王家文：我們_____都好。你呢？工作怎麼樣？

王明文：我剛來的時候很忙，工作常常沒做_____。_____,
現在已經_____了。

王家文：哇！你的_____一定很大。

王明文：_____同事們都很_____, _____幫
我忙。

王家文：聽起來你的同事對你很好啊！

王明文：是啊！如果我有聽不_____或看不懂的_____, 也都
是同事幫忙一起_____的。

王家文：你的_____有多少同事？



Lesson 06 同事對我很好

王明文：有二十幾位同事，大家都很好_____。雖然_____
_____不同，有的人_____，有的人_____，
但是都很好_____。

王家文：你對現在的工作很_____，是吧？

王明文：因為這裡的工作_____很好，同事們都很_____
_____，也會_____幫忙，所以在這裡工作很開心。

王家文：我覺得你決定到美國工作是對的。

王明文：我來這裡以後，_____很多經驗，_____對我
的未來一定有_____。

王家文：爸媽要我_____你，好好地_____自己。

王明文：請爸媽_____，我會照顧自己的。

3. Choose a person to introduce to everyone and pair up with them to engage in a Q&A dialog using the following sentences to talk about their relationship with you, their personality and their interests.

① 你要介紹的人是誰？

我要介紹_____。

② 你們的關係是什麼？

他/她是我的_____。

我們是_____。

③ 他/她的個性怎麼樣？

他/她的個性_____。

4 他 / 她對什麼有興趣？

他 / 她對_____有興趣。

他 / 她的興趣是_____。

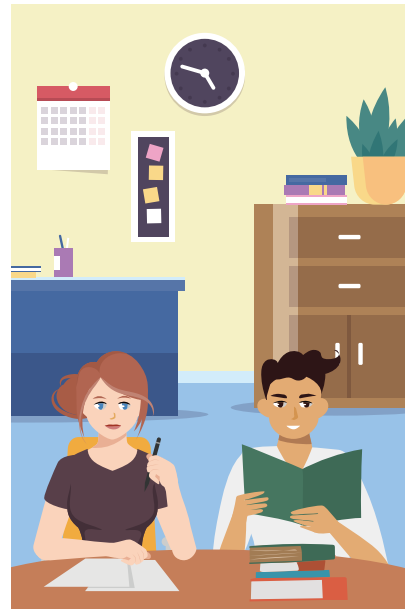
4. From the illustrations, choose something you plan to do and with whom you are going to do it, then fill in the blanks of the sentences to state your reasons for doing so.



工作



買東西



練習中文

1 我打算去_____，因為最近_____

(生活情形 / 工作情形)，所以_____。

2 我想跟我的_____ (同事 / 朋友 / 家人 / 同學) 一起做，因為

_____ (名字) 的個性又_____，又_____，

很好相處，做事也很_____。

3 我們會互相幫忙，跟他 / 她一起_____ (做的事情)，我很

_____ (放心 / 開心 / 滿意)。



文化單元 (二) Culture Notes

Taiwan Tea



上次明文請我們喝的臺灣茶，很好喝，也很香。



是啊！茶葉的品質好，明文泡茶也泡得很好。



聽說烏龍茶是臺灣最好的茶，是嗎？



我也不太懂，我只知道臺灣的茶文化很有意思。

Tea making and drinking by people in Taiwan has a venerable history. Taiwan is best known for producing three different basic types of tea, which are primarily distinguished by the degree of oxidation or fermentation during production. Taiwan's black tea is fully fermented, its green tea unfermented or very lightly fermented, while its oolong tea is semi-fermented, typically at 20 to 60 percent oxidation. Among these three types, oolong tea is the quintessential Taiwan tea.

Even oolong tea itself has distinctive varieties and flavors, mainly due to the way each type is made. While all oolong teas are semi-fermented during production, varying degrees of fermentation and drying or roasting produce different varieties, such as comparatively light-flavored baozhong tea (包種茶 *bāozhǒngchá*), relatively strong-flavored tieguanyin (鐵觀音 *tiěguānyīn*), and the like. All of the oolong tea varieties have gained prominence.

When people in Taiwan drink tea, they like to do so in the company of friends. Many homes in Taiwan feature a tea table in the living room, outfitted with a set of tea implements and vessels of fragrant tea leaves. When friends come over, they sit around the table and chat while the tea is brewed, and then enjoy savoring and drinking it together. In the 1970s, Taiwanese society began to place great emphasis on the tea aesthetic (茶藝 *cháyì*) concretized in the form of holding tea banquets (茶席 *cháxí*). At a formal tea banquet, master tea brewers (茶人 *chárén*) are invited to prepare the tea, so that participants can better appreciate the aroma and taste of each tea presented. Use of elegant tea utensils is *de rigueur*. In addition to exquisitely made petite teapots (茶壺 *chá hú*) for brewing the tea, there are tea-scenting cups (聞香杯 *wénxiāngbēi*) designed solely for first savoring the aroma of each tea before it is then poured into tea-tasting cups (品茶杯 *pǐnchá bēi*) to be slowly imbibed and appreciated. A tablecloth and vase of flowers are also placed on the tea table, occasionally supplemented by light snacks that match the flavor of each tea, or the sound of traditional Chinese music, creating an elegant and pleasant ambience.

More than a century after Taiwan's oolong tea gained international fame, another Taiwan creation—bubble tea, or “pearl milk tea” (珍珠奶茶 *zhēnzhū nǎichá*)—has skyrocketed to worldwide popularity. Thus, in Taiwan today, while tea drinking remains a symbol of high culture and an important medium for socializing with friends, the innovation and meteoric rise of bubble tea has infused the tea scene in Taiwan with new life and vitality.





九份阿妹茶樓 (Jiǔfēn Āmèi Chálóu,
Jiufen Amei Tea House)



青田茶館 (Qīngtián Chágǔǎn, Qingtian Tea
House)



茶具 (chájù, tea utensil set)



蓋茶碗 (gàicháwǎn,
covered tea bowl)



茶葉 (cháyè, tea
leaves)



茶色 (chásè, brewed tea hue)



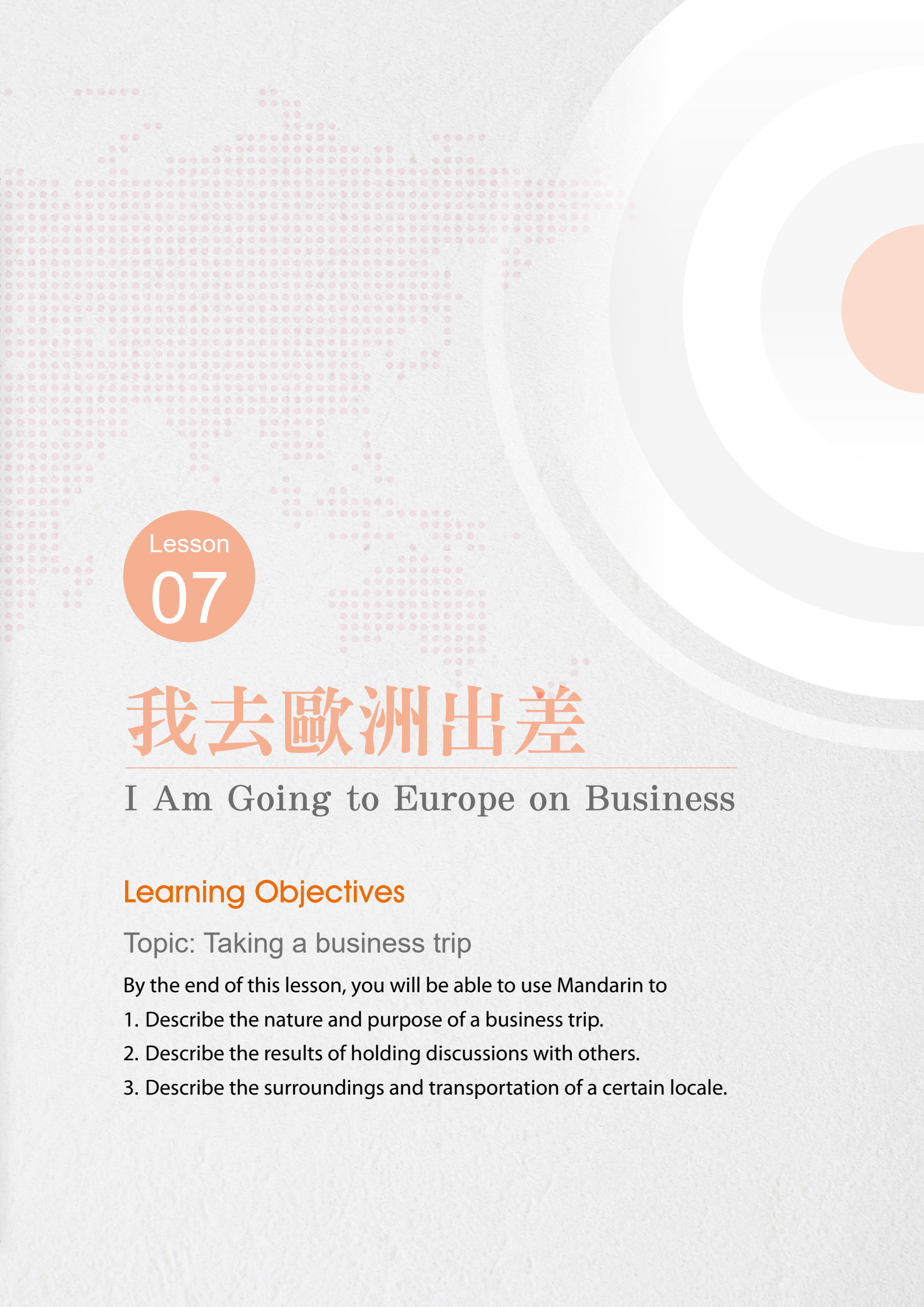
茶食 (cháshí, tea edibles)



臺灣的茶園 (Táiwān de chányuán,
Taiwan tea plantation)



製茶工具 (zhìchá gōngjù, tea-production
implements)



Lesson

07

我去歐洲出差

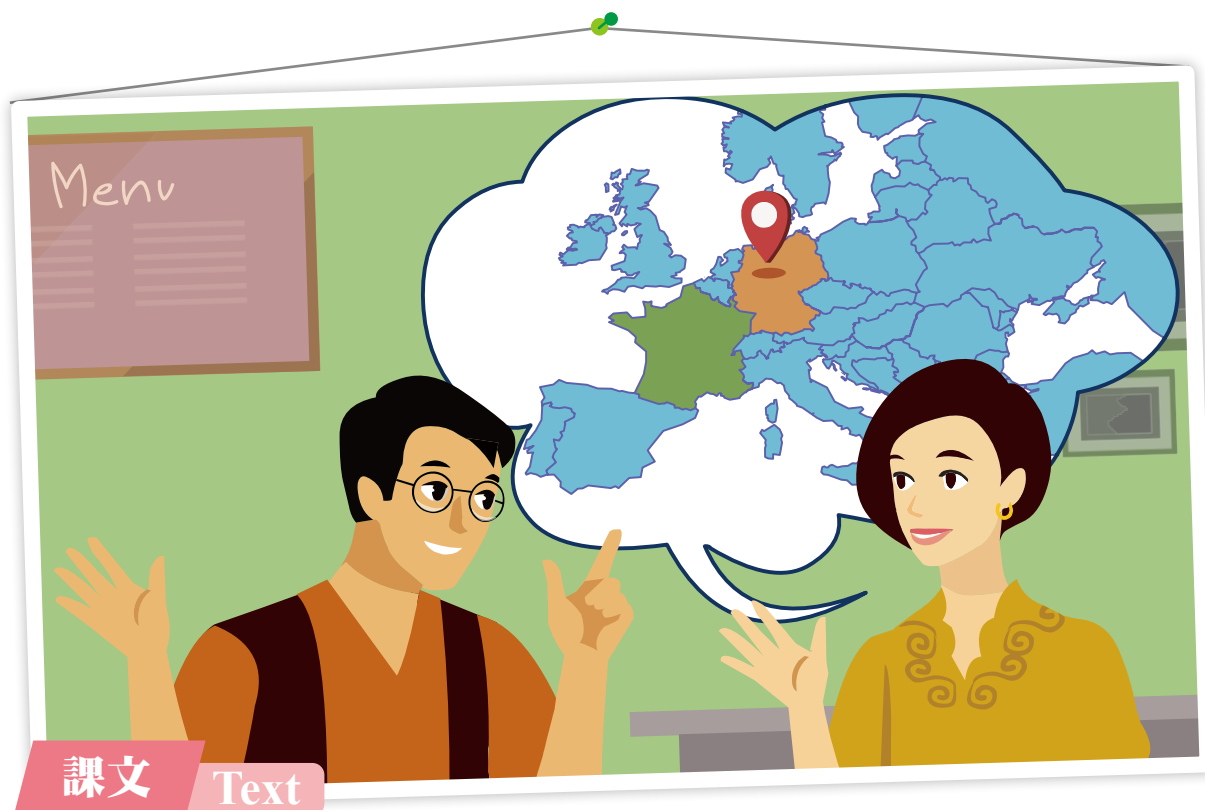
I Am Going to Europe on Business

Learning Objectives

Topic: Taking a business trip

By the end of this lesson, you will be able to use Mandarin to

1. Describe the nature and purpose of a business trip.
2. Describe the results of holding discussions with others.
3. Describe the surroundings and transportation of a certain locale.



課文

Text



家^ㄅ安^ㄢ，好^ㄏ久^ㄅ沒^ㄟ看^ㄎ到^ㄉ妳^ㄣ，妳^ㄣ最^ㄟ近^ㄣ在^ㄟ忙^ㄣ。

Jiāān, hǎojiǔ méi kàndào nǐ, nǐ zuìjìn zài máng

什^ㄕ麼^ㄟ呢^ㄣ？

shénme ne?



我^ㄨ去^ㄟ歐^ㄠ洲^ㄣ出^ㄣ差^ㄟ，順^ㄕ便^ㄟ去^ㄟ看^ㄎ看^ㄎ親^ㄣ戚^ㄣ。

Wǒ qù Ōuzhōu chūchāi, shùnbìan qù kànkàn qīnqī.



妳^ㄣ去^ㄟ了^ㄟ哪^ㄣ些^ㄟ國^ㄍ家^ㄣ？

Nǐ qùle nǎxiē guójiā?



我^ㄨ先^ㄣ去^ㄟ了^ㄟ德^ㄉ國^ㄣ，公^ㄍ司^ㄣ派^ㄟ我^ㄨ去^ㄟ跟^ㄟ一^ㄟ家^ㄣ。

Wǒ xiān qùle Déguó, gōngsī pài wǒ qù gēn yì jiā

貿^ㄇ易^ㄣ公^ㄍ司^ㄣ談^ㄎ合^ㄟ作^ㄟ的^ㄟ事^ㄟ。

màoyì gōngsī tán hézuò de shì.



你^ㄣ們^ㄣ談^ㄎ得^ㄟ怎^ㄟ麼^ㄟ樣^ㄣ？

Nǐmen tán de zěnmeyàng?



談^ㄎ得^ㄟ很^ㄟ順^ㄕ利^ㄣ。我^ㄨ們^ㄣ兩^ㄣ家^ㄣ公^ㄍ司^ㄣ已^ㄟ經^ㄣ。

Tán de hěn shùnlì. Wǒmen liǎng jiā gōngsī yǐjīng

谈^{ㄊㄢˊ}好^{ㄏㄠˇ}了^{ㄌㄜˊ}，也^ㄟ决^{ㄐㄨㄟˊ}定^{ㄉㄧㄥˋ}以^ㄧ后^{ㄏㄠˋ}怎^{ㄗㄥˋ}么^{ㄇㄛˋ}合^{ㄏㄜˊ}作^{ㄗㄜˊ}了^{ㄌㄜˊ}。
tánhǎo le, yě juéding yǐhòu zěnmě hézuò le.



希^{ㄒㄧˊ}望^{ㄨㄥˋ}你^{ㄋㄧˇ}们^{ㄇㄣˊ}公^{ㄍㄨㄥ}司^ㄙ发^{ㄈㄚˊ}展^{ㄓㄢˋ}得^{ㄉㄜˊ}越^{ㄩㄝˋ}来^{ㄌㄞˊ}越^{ㄩㄝˋ}好^{ㄏㄠˇ}。
Xīwàng nǐmen gōngsī fāzhǎn de yuèláiyuè hǎo.



我^{ㄨㄛˊ}们^{ㄇㄣˊ}公^{ㄍㄨㄥ}司^ㄙ的^{ㄉㄜˊ}老^{ㄌㄠˊ}板^{ㄅㄢˊ}希^{ㄒㄧˊ}望^{ㄨㄥˋ}以^ㄧ后^{ㄏㄠˋ}能^{ㄋㄥˊ}在^{ㄗㄞˊ}德^{ㄉㄜˊ}国^{ㄍㄨㄛˊ}。
Wǒmen gōngsī de lǎobǎn xīwàng yǐhòu néng zài Déguó

投^{ㄊㄠˊ}资^{ㄗㄧˊ}，开^{ㄎㄞˊ}分^{ㄈㄣˊ}公^{ㄍㄨㄥ}司^ㄙ。
tóuzī, kāi fēngōngsī.



你^{ㄋㄧˇ}会^{ㄏㄨㄟˊ}不^ㄛ会^{ㄏㄨㄟˊ}说^{ㄕㄨㄞˊ}德^{ㄉㄜˊ}文^{ㄨㄣˊ}?
Nǐ huì bú huì shuō Déwén?



不^ㄛ会^{ㄏㄨㄟˊ}，我^{ㄨㄛˊ}只^ㄓ听^{ㄊㄩㄥˊ}得^{ㄉㄜˊ}懂^{ㄉㄨㄥˇ}几^{ㄐㄩˇ}句^{ㄐㄩˊ}话^{ㄏㄨㄚˊ}。我^{ㄨㄛˊ}是^ㄕ用^{ㄩㄥˊ}。
Bú huì, wǒ zhǐ tīng de dǒng jǐ jù huà. Wǒ shì yòng

英^{ㄩㄥ}文^{ㄨㄣˊ}跟^{ㄍㄞ}他^{ㄊㄚˊ}们^{ㄇㄣˊ}沟^{ㄍㄠ}通^{ㄊㄨㄥˊ}的^{ㄉㄜˊ}。
Yīngwén gēn tāmen gōutōng de.



工^{ㄍㄨㄥ}作^{ㄗㄜˊ}做^{ㄉㄜˊ}完^{ㄨㄢˊ}了^{ㄌㄜˊ}以^ㄧ后^{ㄏㄠˋ}，你^{ㄋㄧˇ}去^{ㄑㄩˊ}哪^{ㄋǎ}里^{ㄌㄩˇ}看^{ㄕㄢˋ}亲^{ㄑㄩㄣˊ}戚^{ㄑㄩˊ}?
Gōngzuò zuòwán le yǐhòu, nǐ qù nǎlǐ kàn qīnqī?



我^{ㄨㄛˊ}去^{ㄑㄩˊ}法^{ㄈㄚˊ}国^{ㄍㄨㄛˊ}找^{ㄓㄞˊ}我^{ㄨㄛˊ}阿^{ㄚˊ}姨^{ㄧˊ}，有^{ㄩˊ}两^{ㄌㄠˊ}年^{ㄋㄢˊ}多^{ㄉㄜˊ}没^{ㄇㄟˊ}。
Wǒ qù Fǎguó zhǎo wǒ āyí, yǒu liǎng nián duō méi

看^{ㄕㄢˋ}到^{ㄉㄠˊ}她^{ㄊㄚˊ}和^{ㄏㄜˊ}表^{ㄅㄞˊ}妹^{ㄇㄟˊ}了^{ㄌㄜˊ}。
kàndào tā hàn biǎomèi le.



你^{ㄋㄧˇ}阿^{ㄚˊ}姨^{ㄧˊ}住^{ㄓㄞˊ}的^{ㄉㄜˊ}地^{ㄉㄧˊ}方^{ㄈㄤ}离^{ㄌㄩˊ}德^{ㄉㄜˊ}国^{ㄍㄨㄛˊ}远^{ㄩㄢˊ}吗^{ㄇㄚˊ}?
Nǐ āyí zhù de dìfāng lí Déguó yuǎn ma?



不^ㄛ远^{ㄩㄢˊ}。我^{ㄨㄛˊ}从^{ㄘㄨㄥˊ}德^{ㄉㄜˊ}国^{ㄍㄨㄛˊ}搭^{ㄉㄚˊ}火^{ㄏㄨㄛˊ}车^{ㄔㄞˊ}到^{ㄉㄠˊ}阿^{ㄚˊ}姨^{ㄧˊ}家^{ㄐㄞˊ}，
Bù yuǎn. Wǒ cóng Déguó dā huǒchē dào āyí jiā,

才^{ㄘㄞˊ}两^{ㄌㄠˊ}个^{ㄍㄜˊ}多^{ㄉㄜˊ}小^{ㄒㄞㄠˊ}时^{ㄕㄞˊ}。
cái liǎng ge duō xiǎoshí.



听^{ㄊㄩㄥˊ}说^{ㄕㄨㄞˊ}欧^ㄠ洲^{ㄗㄠ}大^{ㄉㄚˊ}城^{ㄔㄞˊ}市^{ㄕㄨˊ}的^{ㄉㄜˊ}交^{ㄐㄞˊ}通^{ㄊㄨㄥˊ}很^{ㄏㄜˊ}方^{ㄈㄤ}便^{ㄅㄟˊ}，
Tīngshuō Ōuzhōu dà chéngshì de jiāotōng hěn fāngbiàn,

出^{ㄔㄨˊ}门^{ㄇㄣˊ}坐^{ㄗㄜˊ}地^{ㄉㄧˊ}铁^{ㄊㄜˊ}或^{ㄏㄜˊ}是^ㄕ坐^{ㄗㄜˊ}公^{ㄍㄨㄥ}车^ㄙ都^{ㄉㄜˊ}很^{ㄏㄜˊ}容^{ㄖㄨㄥˊ}易^{ㄩˊ}。
chūmén zuò dìtiě huòshì zuò gōngchē dōu hěn róngyì.



Lesson 07 我去歐洲出差



是^啊！搭^火車^就可^以從^一個^國家^到
Shì a! Dā huǒchē jiù kěyǐ cóng yí ge guójiā dào

其^他國^家。
qítā guójiā.



我^對歐^洲的^文化^有興^趣，要^是以^後
Wǒ duì Ōuzhōu de wénhuà yǒu xìngqù, yàoshì yǐhòu

有^機會^去歐^洲旅^行，一^定先^請教^妳。
yǒu jīhuì qù Ōuzhōu lǚxíng, yídìng xiān qǐngjiào nǐ.



沒^問題[，]我^會好^好地^給你^介紹^一些[。]
Méiwèntí, wǒ huì hàohǎo de gěi nǐ jièshào yìxiē

好^玩的^地方[。]
hǎowán de dìfāng.



生詞 Vocabulary

1. 出 ^差	chūchāi	V	take a business trip
2. 順 ^便	shùnbìan	Adv	casually
3. 親 ^戚	qīnqī	N	relatives
4. 談 ^話	tán	V	discuss
5. 順 ^利	shùnlì	Vs	smoothly
6. 老 ^闆	lǎobǎn	N	boss, proprietor
7. 投 ^資	tóuzī	V	invest
8. 開 ^房	kāi	V	open
9. 句 ^子	jù	M	Measure word for phrase, sentence, or utterance
10. 用 ^法	yòng	Prep	use

11. 溝 ^{ㄍㄡ} 通 ^{ㄊㄨㄥ}	gōutōng	V	communicate
12. 阿 ^ㄞ 姨 ^ㄧ	āyí	N	aunt
13. 表 ^{ㄅㄧㄠ} 妹 ^{ㄇㄟ}	biǎomèi	N	[younger female] cousin
14. 火 ^{ㄏㄨㄛ} 車 ^{ㄔㄜ}	huǒchē	N	train
15. 才 ^{ㄘㄞ}	cái	Adv	merely, only
16. 交 ^{ㄐㄧㄠ} 通 ^{ㄊㄨㄥ}	jiāotōng	N	transportation, traffic
17. 地 ^{ㄉㄧ} 鐵 ^{ㄊㄧㄝ}	dìtiě	N	subway, underground
18. 公 ^{ㄍㄨㄥ} 車 ^{ㄔㄜ}	gōngchē	N	bus, coach
19. 其 ^ㄙ 他 ^{ㄊㄚ}	qítā	Det	other
20. 文 ^{ㄨㄣ} 化 ^{ㄏㄨㄚ}	wénhuà	N	culture
21. 請 ^{ㄑㄩㄥ} 教 ^{ㄐㄧㄠ}	qǐngjiào	V	consult [someone], ask for advice
22. 好 ^{ㄏㄠ} 玩 ^{ㄨㄢ}	hǎowán	Vs	fun

短語

Phrases

23. 沒 ^{ㄇㄞ} 看 ^{ㄎㄢ} 到 ^{ㄊㄠ}	méi kàndào	did not see
24. 談 ^{ㄊㄢ} 好 ^{ㄏㄠ} 了 ^{ㄌㄠ}	tánhǎo le	finished discussing
25. 越 ^{ㄩㄝ} 來 ^{ㄌㄞ} 越 ^{ㄩㄝ}	yuèláiyuè	more and more...

專有名詞

Proper Nouns

26. 歐 ^ㄞ 洲 ^{ㄓㄠ}	Ōuzhōu	N	Europe
27. 德 ^{ㄉㄝ} 國 ^{ㄍㄨㄛ}	Déguó	N	Germany
28. 德 ^{ㄉㄝ} 文 ^{ㄨㄣ}	Déwén	N	the German language



語法

Grammar

1

Verb Complement 到 dào

“manage to V” or “accomplish Ving”

Appending the verb complement 到 *dào* after a verb expresses whether or not the implied objective of the action expressed by the verb has been accomplished. Affirmation of accomplishing the objective is expressed by V + 到了 *dào le* (Example 1). Negation of accomplishing the objective is expressed by 沒 *méi* V 到 *dào* (Example 2). The pattern V + 得 / 不 *de/bù* + 到 *dào* expresses the potential (or lack of potential) to accomplish the objective (Example 3).

Examples:

- (1) 王明文找到了自己喜歡的工作。

Wang Mingwen has found a job that he likes.

- (2) 杜翔說林老師在教室，但是我沒看到她。

Dushyant said that Teacher Lin was in the classroom, but I did not see her.

- (3) A：在臺灣買得到買不到美國的衣服？

Can one buy American clothing in Taiwan?

B：買得到，很多商店都有。

Yes, you can. Many stores have it.

- (1) 晚上在海邊可以看到天上有很多星星。

Wǎnshàng zài hǎibiān kěyǐ kàndào tiānshàng yǒu hěn duō xīngxīng.

During nighttime at the seashore, you can see many stars in the sky.

- (2) 老闆希望公司越來越好，我想我們做得到。

Lǎobǎn xīwàng gōngsī yuèláiyuè hǎo, wǒ xiǎng wǒmen zuò de dào.

The boss hopes that the company will get better and better. I think we can do that.

- (3) 高莉亞：妳今天去逛街，買到了什麼東西？

Nǐ jīntiān qù guàngjiē, mǎidào le shénme dōngxi?

You went shopping today, what did you end up buying?

張家安：我逛了很久，可是什麼都沒買到。

Wǒ guàngle hěnjiǔ, kěshì shénme dōu méi mǎidào.

I browsed for quite a while, but didn't manage to buy anything.

- (4) 何 希：好像有人在外面說話，妳聽到了嗎？

Hǎoxiàng yǒu rén zài wàimiàn shuōhuà, nǐ tīngdào le ma?

It seems someone was talking outside. Did you hear it?

高莉亞：我沒聽到。

Wǒ méi tīngdào.

No, I didn't hear it.

Exercise

Combine the verb provided in each sentence below with the complement 到 *dào* to complete the sentence.

- 1 你在十樓，你_____（看）一樓的公車嗎？
- 2 臺灣的茶很有名，在很多國家都_____（喝）。
- 3 他去了很多家手機店，都_____（找）他想買的手機。
- 4 在美國很容易_____（買）歐洲的東西。
- 5 在美味餐廳_____（吃）最好吃的牛肉麵。

2

Verb Complement 好 *hǎo*

“to properly carry out and conclude [an action]”

Appending the complement 好 *hǎo* to a verb indicates that the action expressed by the verb has been properly carried out and concluded with ideal or satisfactory results. The complement 好 *hǎo* is appended to the verb to express that preparations for an action have been made and it can be completed (Example 1). The pattern 沒 V 好 expresses that preparations for the action are not yet completed to a satisfactory or ideal degree (Example 2). The pattern V + 得 / 不 + 好 can express the potential/lack of potential for the action to be concluded to an ideal or satisfactory degree (Example 3).

Note that the complement 好 *hǎo* and the complement 完 *wán* presented in Lesson 6 may appear to overlap to a certain extent, but in fact they do not convey exactly the same meaning. For example, 做 *zuò* + 完 *wán* indicates sufficient capability, time or workload to complete an action, while 做 *zuò* + 好 *hǎo* indicates that the action can be completed, and moreover, accomplished to a satisfactory or ideal degree.

Examples:

- (1) 感恩節的烤火雞我已經準備好了。

I have fully prepared the Thanksgiving roast turkey.

- (2) 王明文要搬家，可是房子還沒找好。

Wang Mingwen wants to move, but has not yet found a place.

- (3) A：你一個人做得好烤火雞嗎？

Can you roast a turkey all by yourself?

B：我不太會做，可能做不好。

I am not very good at it, so I might not be able to accomplish that.





Lesson 07 我去歐洲出差



- (1) 去歐洲旅行的資料我都找好了。

Qù Ōuzhōu lǚxíng de zīliào wǒ dōu zhǎohǎo le.

I have found the information for traveling to Europe.

- (2) 我表妹畢業以後的計畫都想好了。

Wǒ biǎomèi bìyè yǐhòu de jìhuà dōu xiǎnghǎo le.

My cousin has thought out what she plans to do after graduation.

- (3) 高莉亞：妳要去度假的東西都準備好了嗎？

Nǐ yào qù dùjià de dōngxi dōu zhǔnbèihǎo le ma?

Have you prepared all the things you need for your vacation?

麗莎：我最近很忙，還沒準備好。

Wǒ zuìjìn hěn máng, hái méi zhǔnbèihǎo.

I have been busy recently, so have not completed preparations.

- (4) 老闆：妳的計畫，一個星期做得好做不好？

Nǐ de jìhuà, yí ge xīngqī zuò de hǎo zuò bù hǎo?

Can your plan be accomplished in one week?

張家安：沒問題，我做得好。

Méiwèntí, wǒ zuò de hǎo.

No problem, I can pull it off.

Exercise

Combine the verb provided in each sentence below with the complement 好 hǎo to complete the sentence.

- 1 菜已經_____（做）了，大家吃飯吧！
- 2 那些水果已經_____（洗）了，可以吃了。
- 3 老闆需要的資料，我還沒_____（準備），我怕下班以前來不及給他。
- 4 同事很熱心地幫我搬家，所以一天就_____（搬）了。
- 5 度假要住的旅館我_____（找）了，可是車還沒
_____（租）。

3

越來越 yuèlái yuè + Vs more and more + Vs

The adverbial pattern 越來越 yuèlái yuè + Vs expresses a progressive increase in degree of the stative verb that it modifies, such as 好 hǎo (good), 快 kuài (fast), 多 duō (many, more), 少 shǎo (few, less), 冷 lěng (cold), 熱 rè (hot), 淡 dàn (bland), 便宜 piányi (cheap), 好吃 hǎo chī (tasty), etc.

Examples:

- (1) 天氣越來越熱了。

The weather is getting hotter and hotter.

- (2) 我們公司發展得越來越好了。

Our company is getting better and better.

- (1) 東西越來越貴了。

Dōngxi yuèlái yuè guì le.

Things are getting more and more expensive.

- (2) 喜歡吃沙拉的人越來越多了。

Xǐhuān chī shālā de rén yuèlái yuè duō le.

More and more people like to eat salad.

- (3) 何希跑步跑得越來越快了。

Héxī pǎo bù pǎo de yuèlái yuè kuài le.

José is jogging faster and faster.

- (4) 這杯茶的味道越來越淡了。

Zhè bēi chá de wèidào yuèlái yuè dàn le.

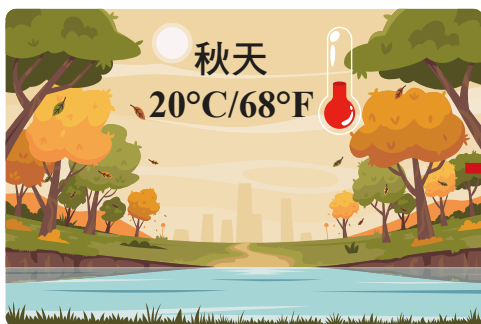
This cup of tea tastes more and more bland.



Exercise

Look at each illustration, then use the pattern 越來越 yuèlái yuè + Vs to complete the sentence appropriately.

1



➡ 這裡的天氣_____。



Lesson 07 我去歐洲出差

2



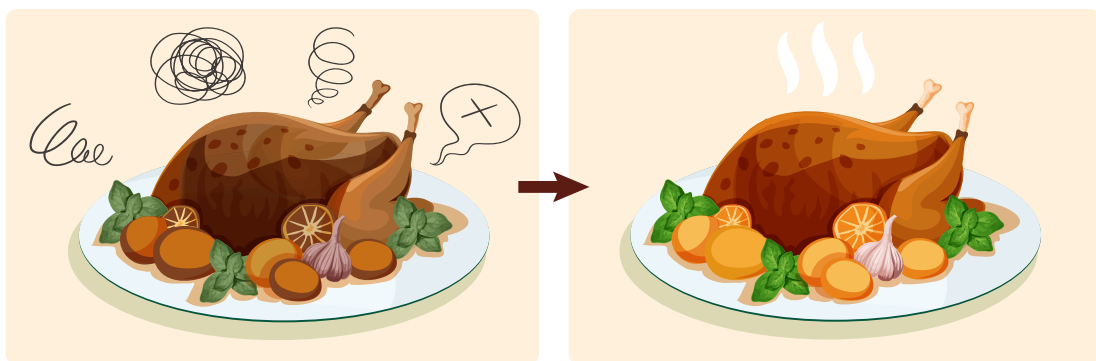
➡ 在公園運動的人_____。

3

11月 November 今天	SUN	MON	TUE	WED	THU	FRI	SAT
			1	2	3	4	5
	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
	13	14	15	16	17	18	19
	20	21	22	23	24 感恩節	25	26
	27	28	29	30			

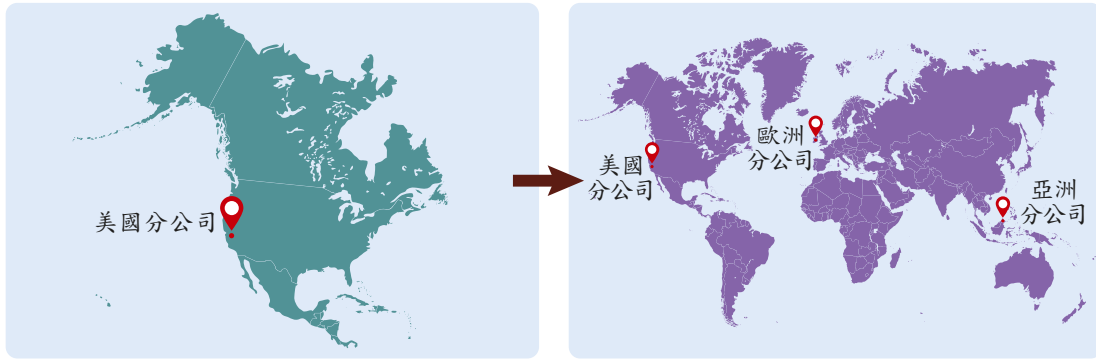
➡ 離感恩節_____。

4



➡ 高莉亞烤火雞烤得_____。

5



➡ 那家科技公司的分公司_____。

4

才 cái merely, only

The adverb 才 cái in this lesson implies that the amount of something referred to is small, or the time involved is brief compared to conventional expectation.

Examples:

- (1) 昨天晚飯我才吃了一個蘋果。
All that I ate for dinner yesterday was one apple.
- (2) 她才來這家公司一個月。
She has only come to this company for a month.

(1) 王小姐才學了三個月德文。

Wáng xiǎojiě cá xuéle sān ge yuè Déwén.

Miss Wang has only studied German for three months.

(2) 這些甜點才十塊錢，真便宜！

Zhèxiē tiándiǎn cá shí kuài qián, zhēn piányí!

These desserts are really inexpensive, they are merely ten dollars!



(3) 亞洲我才去過一次。

Yàzhōu wǒ cáì qùguò yí cì.

I have only been to Asia once.

(4) 公司派麗莎去歐洲出差，她才去了兩天就回來了。

Gōngsī pài Lìshā qù Ōuzhōu chūchāi, tā cáì qùle liǎng tiān jiù huílái le.

The company sent Lisa on a business trip to Europe, and she came back after only two days.

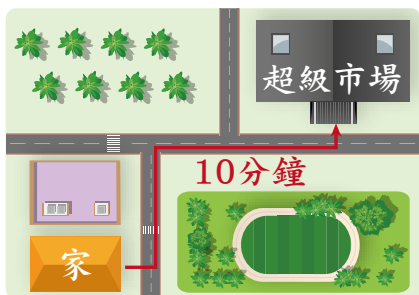


Lesson 07 我去歐洲出差

Exercise

Look at each illustration, then use the adverb 才 *cái* to complete each sentence.

1



高莉亞：我們走路去超級市場，還是開車去？

何 希：我們走路吧，走到那裡才

_____。

2



老師：快要上課了，大家怎麼還沒來？

杜翔：是啊，現在教室裡面才

_____。

3



麗 莎：妳覺得我買哪條裙子比較好？

高莉亞：那條白色的_____，

真便宜，買白色的吧。

4



王明文：你們認識很久了嗎？

杜 翔：不是，我們_____

_____。

5



王明文：妳常常自己泡臺灣茶嗎？

張家安：不常，我_____

_____。

綜合活動

Classroom Activities



1. Read aloud

王明文：家安，好久沒看到妳，妳最近在忙什麼呢？

張家安：我去歐洲出差，順便去看看親戚。

王明文：妳去了哪些國家？

張家安：我先去了德國，公司派我去跟一家貿易公司談合作的事。

王明文：你們談得怎麼樣？

張家安：談得很順利。我們兩家公司已經談好了，也決定以後怎麼合作了。

王明文：希望你們公司發展得越來越好。

張家安：我們公司的老闆希望以後能在德國投資，開分公司。

王明文：妳會不會說德文？

張家安：不會，我只聽得懂幾句話。我是用英文跟他們溝通的。

王明文：工作做完了以後，妳去哪裡看親戚？

張家安：我去法國找我阿姨，有兩年多沒看到她和表妹了。

王明文：妳阿姨住的地方離德國遠嗎？

張家安：不遠。我從德國搭火車到阿姨家，才兩個多小時。

王明文：聽說歐洲大城市的交通很方便，出門坐地鐵或是坐公車都很容易。

張家安：是啊！搭火車就可以從一個國家到其他國家。

王明文：我對歐洲的文化有興趣，要是以後有機會去歐洲旅行，一定先請教妳。

張家安：沒問題，我會好好地給你介紹一些好玩的地方。

2. Fill in the blanks

Based on the preceding dialogue, fill in the missing words of each sentence with the appropriate characters or pinyin.

王明文：家安，好久沒看到妳，妳_____在忙什麼呢？

張家安：我去歐洲_____，_____去看

_____。

王明文：妳去了哪些國家？



張家安：我先去了德國，公司_____我去跟一家貿易公司_____合作的事。

王明文：你們談得怎麼樣？

張家安：談得很_____。我們兩家公司已經談好了，也決定以後怎麼合作了。

王明文：希望你們公司_____得越來越好。

張家安：我們公司的_____希望以後能在德國_____，開分公司。

王明文：妳會不會說德文？

張家安：不會，我只聽得懂幾句話。我是用英文跟他們_____的。

王明文：工作做完了以後，妳去哪裡看親戚？

張家安：我去法國找我_____，有兩年多沒看到她和_____了。

王明文：妳阿姨住的地方離德國_____嗎？

張家安：不遠。我從德國搭_____到阿姨家，才兩個多小時。

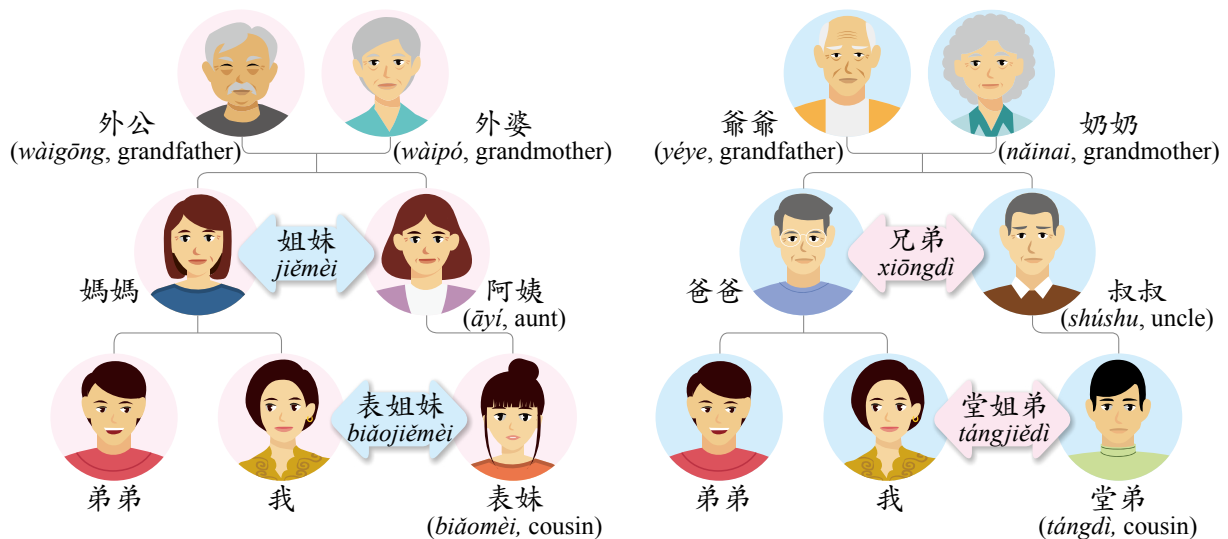
王明文：聽說歐洲大城市的_____很_____，出門坐地鐵或是坐_____都很容易。

張家安：是啊！搭火車就可以從一個國家到_____國家。

王明文：我對歐洲的_____有興趣，要是以後有機會去歐洲_____，一定先_____妳。

張家安：沒問題，我會好好地給你_____一些好玩的地方。

3. Going to see relatives: Refer to the family relationship chart below and complete each sentence to tell everyone your thoughts on how you might go to visit a relative.



- 我想去看我的_____，因為_____。
- 他/她(們)住在_____，我住在_____，離他/她(們)住的地方_____ (遠/近)。
- 從我家到那裡，搭_____ (飛機/火車/公車/地鐵) 要_____ (時間)。
- 我會搭_____ 去，我不會搭_____，因為_____ (貴/慢)。

4. Interview two classmates to get each to tell you their business trip experiences, then write their responses in the corresponding columns below.

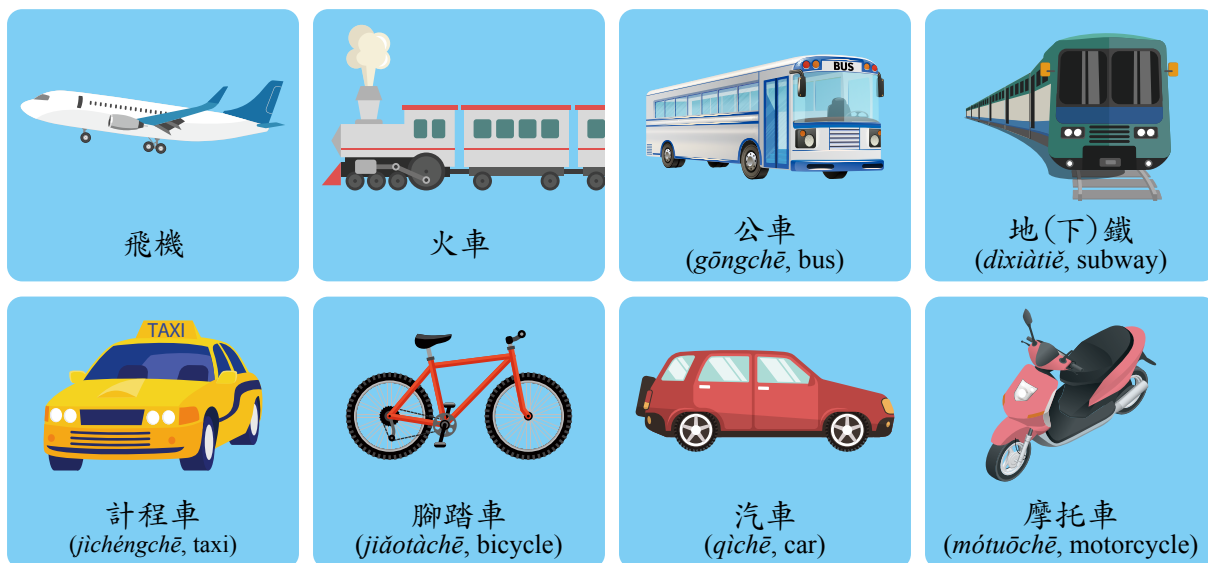
	同學一	同學二
(1) 你常出差嗎?		
(2) 你常去哪裡出差?		



Lesson 07 我去歐洲出差

	同學一	同學二
(3) 你為什麼出差？		
(4) 你覺得出差很辛苦嗎？		
(5) 你覺得出差有意思嗎？		

5. From the illustrations below, choose a means of transportation you often take and/or one you like to take. Then select from the vocabulary panel words with which you can tell everyone the means of transportation you have chosen, what you take it to do, and how you feel about it.



Lesson

08

我做錯事了

I Made a Mistake

Learning Objectives

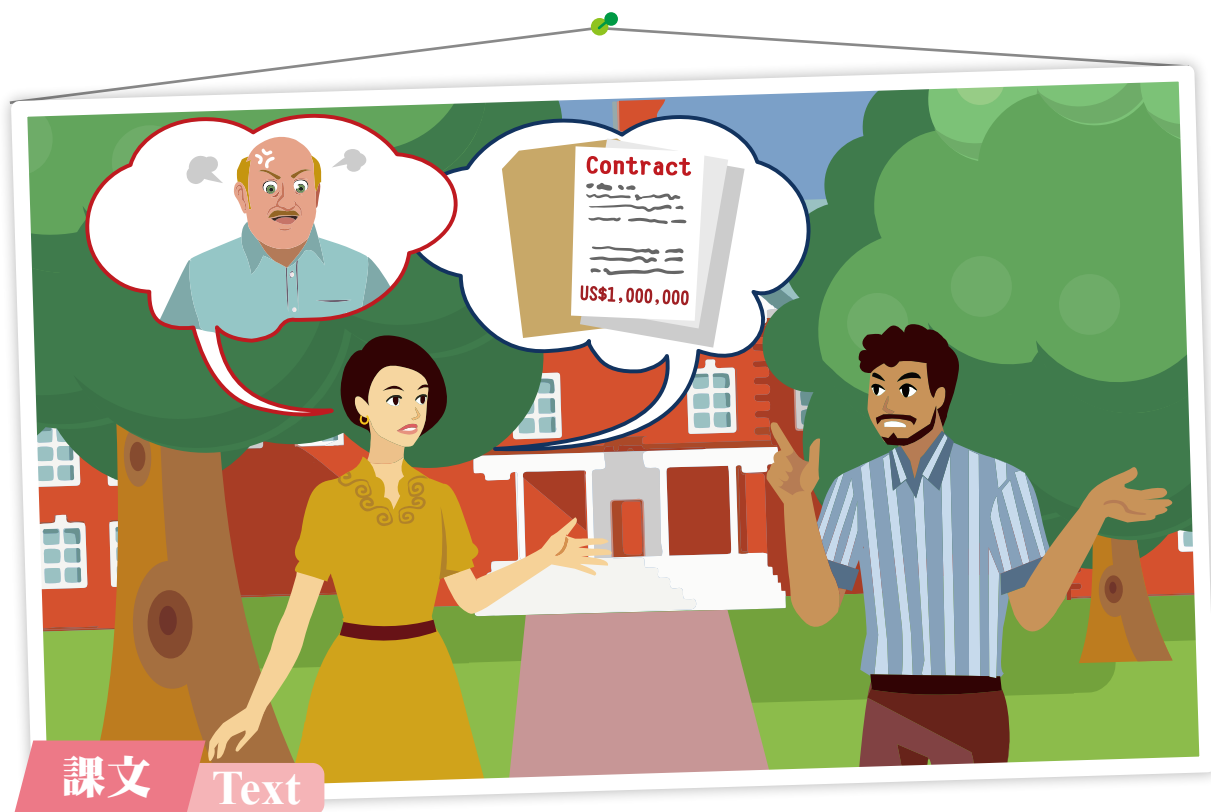
Topic: Introspection

By the end of this lesson, you will be able to use Mandarin to

1. Talk about a mistake you made while at work.
2. Explain why the mistake happened at work.
3. Express your feelings.



Lesson 08 我做錯事了



課文 Text



家安，妳怎麼了？看起來心情不太好。
Jiā'ān, nǐ zěnmēle? Kàn qílái xīnqíng bú tài hǎo.



我昨天在公司被經理罵了。
Wǒ zuótiān zài gōngsī bèi jīnglǐ mà le.



發生了什麼事？
Fāshēngle shénme shì?



唉！我昨天沒看清楚資料，寫錯了。
Āi! Wǒ zuótiān méi kàn qīngchǔ zīliào, xiěcuò le



合約上面的價錢。
héyuē shàngmiàn de jiàqián.



問題嚴重嗎？
Wèntí hěn yánzhòng ma?



還好我給經理看的時候，他發現我
Háihǎo wǒ gěi jīnglǐ kàn de shíhòu, tā fāxiàn wǒ

多寫了一個零。
duō xiěle yí ge líng.



哇！他生氣了吧？
Wa! Tā shēngqìle ba?



他很生氣，所以罵了我一頓。
Tā hěn shēngqì, suǒyǐ màile wǒ yí dùn.



我了解你的感覺，做錯事一定讓你
Wǒ liǎojiě nǐ de gǎnjué, zuòcuò shì yíding ràng nǐ

很不舒服。
hěn bù shūfú.



是啊！相當難過，如果我小心一點
Shì a! Xiāngdāng nánguò, rúguǒ wǒ xiǎoxīn yídiǎn

就不會發生這種問題了。
jiù bú huì fāshēng zhè zhǒng wèntí le.



別難過了。我也有這樣的經驗。
Bié nánguò le. Wǒ yě yǒu zhèyàng de jīngyàn.



你做錯了什麼事？
Nǐ zuòcuò le shénme shì?



有一次，老板讓我翻譯一份資料，
Yǒuyíci, lǎobǎn ràng wǒ fānyì yí fèn zīliào,

我要交給他的時候，發現存在電腦
wǒ yào jiāo gěi tā de shíhòu, fāxiàn cún zài diànnǎo

裡面檔案不見了。我來不及再做
lǐmiàn de dǎng'àn bújiànle. Wǒ láiibùjí zài zuò

一份，就被老板罵了一頓。
yí fèn, jiù bèi lǎobǎn màile yí dùn.



現在大家都用電腦工作，雖然很
Xiànzài dàjiā dōu yòng diànnǎo gōngzuò, suīrán hěn

方便，可是也很容易發生病題。
fāngbiàn, kěshì yě hěn róngyì fāshēng wèntí.



Lesson 08 我做錯事了



我^我現^現在^在給^給老^老闆^闆資^資料^料以^以前^前，一^一定^定多^多
Wǒ xiànzài gěi lǎobǎn zīliào yǐqián, yídìng duō

檢^檢查^查幾^幾次^次，要^要不^不然^然工^工作^作可^可能^能就^就沒^沒了^了。
jiǎnchá jǐ cì, yàobùrán gōngzuò kěnéng jiù méi le.



對^對，每^每份^份資^資料^料都^都要^要看^看得^得很^很清^清楚^楚，也^也要^要
Dui, měi fèn zīliào dōu yào kàn de hěn qīngchǔ, yě yào

認^認真^真地^地檢^檢查^查。
rènzhēn de jiǎnchá.



生詞 Vocabulary

1. 錯 ^錯	cuò	V	mistake, error
2. 心 ^心 情 ^情	xīnqíng	N	mood, frame of mind
3. 被 ^被	bèi	Prep	[passive verb tense marker]
4. 經 ^經 理 ^理	jīnglǐ	N	manager
5. 罵 ^罵	mà	V	scold, criticize, reprimand, admonish
6. 發 ^發 生 ^生	fāshēng	V	occur, happen
7. 唉 ^唉	āi	Ptc	Ugh, alas
8. 清 ^清 楚 ^楚	qīngchǔ	Vs	clear
9. 合 ^合 約 ^約	héyuē	N	contract, agreement
10. 價 ^價 錢 ^錢	jiàqián	N	price
11. 問 ^問 題 ^題	wèntí	N	problem
12. 嚴 ^嚴 重 ^重	yánzhòng	Vs	severe

13. 發 _{ㄈㄚˊ} 現 _{ㄒㄧㄢˋ}	fāxiàn	V	discover
14. 零 _{ㄌㄧㄥˊ}	líng	N	the number zero
15. 生 _{ㄕㄨㄥ} 氣 _{ㄑㄩˋ}	shēngqì	Vs	mad, angry
16. 頓 _{ㄉㄨㄣˋ}	dùn	M	verbal measure word for a duration of action, mostly used with 罵 <i>mà</i> (reprimand) or 打 <i>dǎ</i> (beat, hit).
17. 感 _{ㄍǎ} 覺 _{ㄐㄩㄝˊ}	gǎnjué	N	feeling
18. 讓 _{ㄖㄨㄥˋ}	ràng	V	cause/make/let
19. 難 _{ㄋㄢˊ} 過 _{ㄍㄨㄛˋ}	nánguò	Vs	sad
20. 小 _{ㄒㄩㄠˋ} 心 _{ㄒㄩㄢˋ}	xiǎoxīn	Vs	careful
21. 別 _{ㄇㄧㄝˊ}	bié	Adv	do not V
22. 翻 _{ㄈㄢ} 譯 _{ㄧˋ}	fānyì	V	translate
23. 份 _{ㄈㄣˊ}	fèn	M	measure word for documents, reports, etc.
24. 交 _{ㄐㄢ}	jiāo	V	hand in, turn in
25. 存 _{ㄘㄨㄣˊ}	cún	V	save
26. 檔 _{ㄉㄤˊ} 案 _{ㄢˋ}	dǎng'àn	N	document
27. 檢 _{ㄐㄢ} 查 _{ㄔㄚˊ}	jiǎnchá	V	examine, check, inspect
28. 要 _{ㄩㄠˋ} 不 _{ㄉㄨˋ} 然 _{ㄖㄢˊ}	yàobùrán	Conj	otherwise





Lesson 08 我做錯事了

短語 Phrases

- | | | |
|--|-------------|--|
| 29. 做 ^做 錯 ^錯 了 ^了 | zuòcuò le | made a mistake, did something wrong, botched/bungled something |
| 30. 看 ^看 清 ^清 楚 ^楚 | kàn qīngchǔ | see clearly, discern |
| 31. 有 ^有 一 ^一 次 ^次 | yǒuyíci | there was one time [when]... |
| 32. 不 ^不 見 ^見 了 ^了 | bújiànle | disappear, be missing, be gone |

補充生詞 Supplementary Vocabulary

- | | | | |
|--------------------|----|---|-------------------|
| 33. 打 ^打 | dǎ | V | hit, strike, beat |
|--------------------|----|---|-------------------|

語法 Grammar

1 Verb Complement 錯 cuò

Suffixing the complement 錯 *cuò* to a verb expresses that the result of the action is mistaken or incorrect. Use of this complement conveys a post-completion introspective judgement of a mistaken result, so can only be used with the actual completed form of the verb; it cannot occur in a V + 得 + Vs pattern to express the potential for possibly making a mistake.

Examples:

- (1) 我說錯了紅茶的價錢，老闆很生氣。

I bungled stating the price for black tea, [so] the boss was really angry.

- (2) 這份合約是對的，我沒寫錯。

This contract is correct, I did not miswrite it.

- (1) 你寫錯了這個字，是「末」不是「未」。

Nǐ xiěcuò le zhè ge zì, shì 'mò' bú shì 'wèi'.

You miswrote this character, it is the graph for 末 *mò*, not that for 未 *wèi*.

- (2) 我們聽錯了時間，來得太晚了。

Wǒmen tīngcuò le shíjiān, lái de tài wǎn le.

We misheard the time, so arrived too late.

(3) 請你小心一點，別說錯話了。

Qǐng nǐ xiǎoxīn yìdiǎn, bié shuōcuò huà le.

Please be a bit more careful, don't misspeak.

(4) 我點了烏龍茶，服務員給了我紅茶，他送錯了。

Wǒ diǎnle wūlóngchá, fúwùyuán gěile wǒ hóngchá, tā sòngcuò le.

I ordered oolong tea, but the waiter gave me black tea. He botched the serving.

Exercise

Append the complement 錯 *cuò* to each of the verbs below to complete the sentence.

① 你得小心，老闆讓你做事的時候不要_____（做）了。

② 我以為今天是星期五，所以沒去上課，我_____（看）了時間。

③ 「醫」這個字很難寫，不要_____（寫）了。

④ A：那件衣服太便宜了，只賣「1.99」。

B：你_____（看）價錢了，是「19.9」。

⑤ A：請順便幫我點一杯熱咖啡，別_____（點）了。

B：沒問題，我聽清楚了。



**2****Passive Voice 被 bèi**

A Subject + Verb + Object active voice sentence can be recast in the passive voice by appending the preposition 被 *bèi* to the subject (agent of the action expressed by the verb) to form the sentence pattern [Object+ 被 *bèi* +Subject (Agent)+Verb]. The verb in passive voice sentences usually has a suffix 了 *le* to express completion or finality of result (Example 1). Occasionally, the agent is omitted (Example 2). Negation of agency by the subject is expressed by appending 沒 *méi* to the preposition 被 *bèi* and omitting the suffix 了 *le* (Example 3). Generally, the passive voice is used to express bad or unfortunate incidents.

Examples:

Object (patient) + 被 + Subject (agent) + V

(1) 張家安被老闆罵了。

Joann Zhang was reprimanded by her boss.

(2) 那個孩子被打了。

That child was beaten.

(3) 那三個菜沒被他吃完。

Those three dishes of food were not finished off by him.

(1) 他寫錯了合約，被部門的經理罵了。

Tā xiěcuò le héyuē, bèi bùmén de jīnglǐ mà le.

He miswrote the contract and was taken to task by the department manager.

(2) 妹妹做錯了事，被媽媽罵了一頓。

Mèimei zuòcuò le shì, bèi māma mà le yí dùn.

My [younger] sister messed up and was given a tongue-lashing by Mother.

(3) 我剛買的蛋糕被誰吃了？

Wǒ gāng mǎi de dàngāo bèi shéi chī le?

By whom was the cake I just bought eaten?

(4) 請注意，他們在打球，別被他們的球打到。

Qǐng zhùyì ,tāmen zài dǎqiú, bié bèi tāmen de qiú dǎdào.

Pay attention! They are playing ball, [so] do not get hit by it.

**Exercise**

Use the preposition 被 *bèi* to recast each of the following sentences into the passive voice.

例：老闆罵了我一頓。

➡ 我被老闆罵了一頓。

1 因為張家安寫錯了價錢，經理罵了她。

➡ 因為張家安寫錯了價錢，_____。

2 做事請小心一點，要不然老闆會罵你。

➡ 做事請小心一點，要不然你_____。

3 弟弟喝了我剛泡的烏龍茶。

➡ 我的_____。

4 大家都知道王先生打了張先生。

➡ 大家都知道_____。

5 爸爸發現妹妹昨天沒去上課。

➡ 妹妹_____。

3

讓 ràng make/let/cause someone [to] do something

The preposition 讓 *ràng* has multiple meanings, and thus takes on different significance in different sentences. In this lesson, it expresses what an event or a situation makes someone feel, or the result that it brings.

Examples:

(1) 寫錯合約讓我很難過。

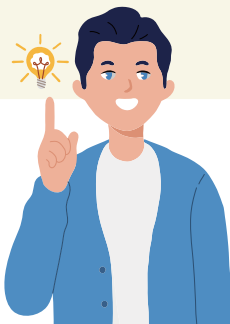
Miswriting the contract made me feel sad.

(2) 老師說我的中文很好，讓我很開心。

The teacher says my Mandarin is pretty good, which makes me feel happy.

(3) 我們什麼時候去度假，讓我想一想。

Let me think about just when will we go on vacation.





Lesson 08 我做錯事了

- (1) 夏天的天氣太熱了，讓大家都舒服。

Xiàtiān de tiānqì tài rè le, ràng dàjiā dōu bù shūfú.

The weather in summer is too hot, making everyone uncomfortable.

- (2) 麗莎帶三明治給我，讓我很高興。

Lìshā dài sānmíngzhì gěi wǒ, ràng wǒ hěn gāoxìng.

Lisa brought me a sandwich, which made me glad.

- (3) 經理讓我說明去歐洲出差的情形。

Jīnglǐ ràng wǒ shuōmíng qù Ōuzhōu chūchāi de qíngxíng.

The manager had me tell all about my business trip to Europe.

- (4) 我要好好地照顧自己，讓父母放心。

Wǒ yào hǎohǎo de zhàogù zìjǐ, ràng fùmǔ fàngxīn.

I have to take really good care of myself to let my parents rest easy.



Exercise

Rewrite the following sentences using the verb 讓 *ràng*.

例：春天天氣很好，我覺得很舒服。

➡ 春天的天氣讓我覺得很舒服。

1 因為張家安看錯了合約，所以老闆很生氣。

➡ 因為張家安看錯了合約，_____。

2 同事都對她很親切，她很開心。

➡ 同事都對她很親切，_____。

3 王先生換了新工作，他壓力很大，怕不能適應。

➡ 王先生換了新工作，新工作_____

_____。

4 杜翔看了很多資料，他現在很了解貿易公司的工作了。

➡ 杜翔看了很多資料，_____。
_____。

5 王明文說明怎麼泡茶，高莉亞聽了以後覺得很有趣。

➡ 王明文說明怎麼泡茶，_____。
_____。

4 Preposition 用 yòng to use

The pattern 用 yòng + N + V is used to convey by what means or manner the action expressed by the verb is carried out.

Examples:

(1) 我聽不懂德文，我用英文跟他們溝通。

I do not understand German, [so] I used English to communicate with them.

(2) 現在大家都用電腦存資料。

Nowadays, everyone uses computers to store information.

(1) 麗莎用信用卡付錢。

Lìshā yòng xìnyòngkǎ fùqián.

Lisa is using a credit card to pay.

(2) 高莉亞用沒吃完的雞肉做了三明治。

Gāo Lìyà yòng méi chīwán de jīròu zuòle sānmíngzhì.

Gloria made sandwiches with leftover chicken.

(3) 張家安用很便宜的價錢租了房子。

Zhāng Jiā'ān yòng hěn piányi de jiàqián zūle fángzi.

Joann Zhang rented a house at a really cheap rate.

(4) 老師讓我用中文介紹自己的興趣。

Lǎoshī ràng wǒ yòng Zhōngwén jièshào zìjǐ de xìngqù.

The teacher asked me to use Mandarin to introduce my interests.



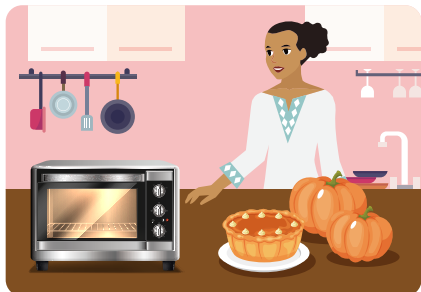


Lesson 08 我做錯事了

Exercise

Look at the illustrations below, then use the pattern 用 *yòng* + N + V to write out each sentence.

1



➡ 麗莎 _____

_____。

2



➡ 王明文 _____

_____。

3



➡ 高莉亞用照片跟林老師說 _____

_____。

4



➡ 高莉亞 _____

_____。

5



➡ 杜翔 _____

_____。

綜合活動

Classroom Activities



1. Read aloud

杜 翔：家安，妳怎麼了？看起來心情不太好。

張家安：我昨天在公司被經理罵了。

杜 翔：發生了什麼事？

張家安：唉！我昨天沒看清楚資料，寫錯了合約上面的價錢。

杜 翔：問題很嚴重嗎？

張家安：還好我給經理看的時候，他發現我多寫了一個零。

杜 翔：哇！他生氣了吧？

張家安：他很生氣，所以罵了我一頓。

杜 翔：我了解妳的感覺，做錯事一定讓妳很不舒服。

張家安：是啊！相當難過，如果我小心一點就不會發生這種問題了。

杜 翔：別難過了。我也有這樣的經驗。

張家安：你做錯了什麼事？

杜 翔：有一次，老闆讓我翻譯一份資料，我要交給他的時候，發現存在電腦裡面的檔案不見了。我來不及再做一份，就被老闆罵了一頓。

張家安：現在大家都用電腦工作，雖然很方便，可是也很容易發生問題。

杜 翔：我現在給老闆資料以前，一定多檢查幾次，要不然工作可能就沒了。

張家安：對，每份資料都要看得很清楚，也要認真地檢查。

2. Fill in the blanks

Based on the preceding dialogue, fill in the missing words of each sentence with the appropriate characters or pinyin.

杜 翔：家安，妳怎麼了？看起來_____不太好。

張家安：我昨天在公司被_____罵了。

杜 翔：_____了什麼事？

張家安：唉！我昨天沒看清楚資料，_____了合約上面的
_____。



Lesson 08 我做錯事了

杜 翔：問題很_____嗎？

張家安：還好我給經理看的時候，他_____我多寫了一個_____。

杜 翔：哇！他_____了吧？

張家安：他很生氣，所以_____了我一頓。

杜 翔：我了解妳的_____，做錯事一定_____妳很不舒服。

張家安：是啊！相當_____，如果我_____一點就不會發生這種問題了。

杜 翔：_____難過了。我也有這樣的經驗。

張家安：你做錯了什麼事？

杜 翔：有一次，老闆讓我_____一份資料，我要_____給他的時候，發現_____在電腦裡面的_____不見了。我來不及再做一_____，就被老闆罵了一_____。

張家安：現在大家都用電腦工作，雖然很方便，可是也很容易發生_____。

杜 翔：我現在給老闆資料以前，一定多_____幾次，_____工作可能就沒了。

張家安：對，每份資料都要看得很_____，也要認真地檢查。



3. Pair up with a classmate and ask each other to answer the following questions about the experience of botching something at work.

① A：你做錯了什麼事？

B：_____。

② A：你做錯事的原因是什麼？

B：_____。

③ A：你被老闆／經理罵了嗎？

B：_____。

④ A：你做錯事的感覺是什麼？

B：_____。

4. Then, still in pairs, and based on the previous answers, practice using the following sentences to console each other.

① 被老闆／經理罵了，一定讓你覺得很_____，很多人都有這樣的_____。

② 我了解你的感覺，因為我也_____。

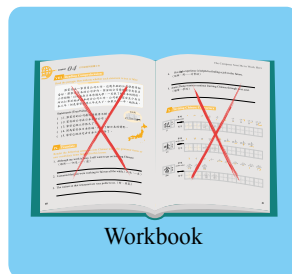
③ 這種情形很多人都會_____，你不要_____。





Lesson 08 我做錯事了

5. Use the following images and vocabulary items to make up a story about doing something wrong or making a mistake, then tell it to everyone in class. The story must include who, what, why, how it felt, and what lesson was learned.





Lesson

09

週末的活動

Weekend Activities

Learning Objectives

Topic: Arranging how you spend your life

By the end of this lesson, you will be able to use Mandarin to

1. Describe how you usually spend your weekends.
2. Describe the housework you often do on weekends.
3. Describe how to arrange weekend activities.



Lesson 09 週末的活動



課文 Text



我_我回_回來_來了_了。何_何希_希，你_你在_在哪_哪裡_裡？
Wǒ huílái le. Héxī, nǐ zài nǎlǐ?



我_我在_在樓_樓上_上書_書房_房。
Wǒ zài lóushàng shūfáng.



請_請你_你下_下來_來，我_我有_有事_事跟_跟你_你說_說。
Qǐng nǐ xiàlái, wǒ yǒu shì gēn nǐ shuō.



我_我在_在整_整理_理資_資料_料，妳_妳上_上來_來吧_吧。
Wǒ zài zhěnglǐ zīliào, nǐ shànglái ba.

(高_高莉_莉亞_亞走_走到_到樓_樓上_上)



我_我姊_姊姊_姊說_說她_她下_下個_個星_星期_期要_要去_去紐_紐約_約出_出差_差，
Wǒ jiějie shuō tā xià ge xīngqī yào qù Niǔyuē chūchāi,

沒_沒有_有人_人幫_幫她_她照_照顧_顧孩_孩子_子，想_想請_請我_我們_們
méiyǒu rén bāng tā zhàogù háiizi, xiǎng qǐng wǒmen

照_照顧_顧一_一下_下。
zhàogù yíxià.



孩^子們^們是^們週^來末^們來^們我^們家^吧？
Háizimen shì zhōumò lái wǒmen jiā ba?



是^們。他^們來^們這^會裡^會不^會會^讓你^覺得^得？
Shì. Tāmen lái zhèlǐ huì bú huì ràng nǐ juéde

煩^煩？
máfan?



不^會會^們。但^是我^們每^個週^末都^要打^掃掃^掃。
Bú huì. Dànshì wǒmen měi ge zhōumò dōu yào dǎsǎo

房^子，就^讓他^們一^起幫^忙忙^吧。
fángzi, jiù ràng tāmen yìqǐ bāngmáng ba.



沒^問題^題，Frank 平^常就^喜歡^幫他^爸爸^爸。
Méi wèntí, Frank píngcháng jiù xǐhuān bāng tā bàba

割^草。有^幫 Nicole 幫^忙忙^那些^畫跟^照片^片，
gēcǎo. Yǒu Nicole bāngmáng, nàxiē huà gēn zhàopiàn,

我^就可^以拿^下來^好好^地擦^一擦^擦。
wǒ jiù kěyǐ ná xiàlái hǎohǎo de cā yì cā.



我^們打^掃完^了，在^院子^烤肉^肉，
Wǒmen dǎsǎowán le, zài yuànzi kǎoròu,

好^不好^好？
hǎo bù hǎo?



孩^子們^們一^定喜^歡烤^肉肉[，]他^們可^以一^一。
Háizimen yídìng xǐhuān kǎoròu, tāmen kěyǐ

幫^忙把^烤肉^的東^西拿^出去^去。
bāngmáng bǎ kǎoròu de dōngxī ná chūqù.



週^末都^在家^有一^點無^聊，我^們。
Zhōumò dōu zài jiā yǒu yídiǎn wúliáo, wǒmen

星^期天^帶他^們出^去玩^玩吧^吧！
xīngqítīan dài tāmen chūqù wánwán ba!



Lesson 09 週末的活動



好啊！上午去附近的小山玩玩。我們
Hǎo a! Shàngwǔ qù fùjìn de xiǎo shān wánwán. Wǒmen

爬上^風去，在山上看風景再慢慢地
pá shàngqù, zài shān shàng kànkàn fēngjǐng zài mànman de

走下來，大概要兩個多小時。
zǒu xiàlái, dàgài yào liǎng ge duō xiǎoshí.



下個週末社區好像有棒球比賽，
Xià ge zhōumò shèqū hǎoxiàng yǒu bàngqiú bǐsài,

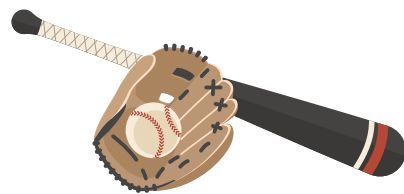
下山以後，我們就帶他們去看比賽。
xià shān yǐhòu, wǒmen jiù dài tāmen qù kàn bǐsài.



好，Frank 非常喜歡打棒球。
Hǎo, Frank fēicháng xǐhuān dǎ bàngqiú.



我想我們這樣安排，會讓他們很
Wǒ xiǎng wǒmen zhèyàng ānpái, huì ràng tāmen hěn
開
開心。
kāixīn.



生詞 Vocabulary

- | | | | |
|-------|----------|---|------------------|
| 1. 活動 | huódòng | N | activity |
| 2. 書房 | shūfáng | N | study |
| 3. 下來 | xiàlái | V | come down |
| 4. 整理 | zhěnglǐ | V | tidy up, arrange |
| 5. 上來 | shànglái | V | come up |
| 6. 打掃 | dǎsǎo | V | clean up |
| 7. 割草 | gēcǎo | V | mow the lawn |
| 8. 畫 | huà | N | painting |

9. 拿 ^{ㄋㄚˊ}	ná	V	take
10. 擦 ^{ㄘㄚ}	cā	V	wipe
11. 院子 ^{ㄩㄢˋ ㄗㄩˋ}	yuànzi	N	courtyard, yard
12. 烤肉 ^{ㄎㄠˋ ㄖㄡˋ}	kǎoròu	V	grill meat
13. 把 ^{ㄅㄚˇ}	bǎ	Prep	[definite object marker]
14. 出去 ^{ㄔㄨˊ ㄑㄩˋ}	chūqù	V	go out
15. 無聊 ^{ㄨˊ ㄌㄧㄠˊ}	wúliáo	Vs	boring, tedious
16. 山 ^{ㄕㄢ}	shān	N	mountain, hill
17. 爬 ^{ㄆㄚˊ}	pá	V	climb
18. 上去 ^{ㄕㄨˊ ㄑㄩˋ}	shàngqù	V	go up
19. 大概 ^{ㄉㄚˋ ㄍㄞˋ}	dàgài	Adv	perhaps, approximately, generally, roughly
20. 棒球 ^{ㄅㄚˋ ㄑㄩˊ}	bàngqiú	N	baseball
21. 比賽 ^{ㄅǐ ㄙㄞˋ}	bǐsài	V	competition, contest, game
22. 下山 ^{ㄒㄩㄚˋ ㄕㄢ}	xià shān	V	descend a mountain, hill
23. 安排 ^{ㄢㄞˊ ㄆㄞˊ}	ānpái	V	arrange

短語

Phrases

24. 拿 ^{ㄋㄚˊ} 下 ^{ㄒㄩㄚˋ} 來 ^{ㄌㄞˊ}	ná xiàlái	bring down [from above]
25. 拿 ^{ㄋㄚˊ} 出 ^{ㄔㄨˊ} 去 ^{ㄑㄩˋ}	ná chūqù	take outside
26. 爬 ^{ㄆㄚˊ} 上 ^{ㄕㄨˊ} 去 ^{ㄑㄩˋ}	pá shàngqù	climb up
27. 走 ^{ㄗㄞˊ} 下 ^{ㄒㄩㄚˋ} 來 ^{ㄌㄞˊ}	zǒu xiàlái	go down



Lesson 09 週末的活動

專有名詞

Proper Nouns

- | | | | |
|--------------------------|--------|---|----------|
| 28. 紐約 <small>紐約</small> | Niǔyuē | N | New York |
|--------------------------|--------|---|----------|

補充生詞

Supplementary Vocabulary

- | | | | |
|--------------------------|--------|---|----------------|
| 29. 垃圾 <small>垃圾</small> | lèsè | N | trash, garbage |
| 30. 桌子 <small>桌</small> | zhuōzi | N | table |
| 31. 椅子 <small>椅</small> | yǐzi | N | chair |

語法

Grammar

1

Directional Complement : Directional Verb + 來 lái / 去 qù

The verbs 來 *lái* and 去 *qù* presented in this lesson convey a meaning different from that previously learned, where they meant “to come [do something],” as in 來學校學中文 (to come to school to learn Mandarin) or “to go [do something],” as in 去公司工作 (to go to the company and work).

In this lesson, they comprise elements of a Directional Complement expressing that the subject, via an action, comes closer to the speaker of the sentence or moves toward a specific point of reference (來 *lái*); or leaves the vicinity of the speaker or moves in a direction opposite to a specific point of reference (去 *qù*). Various Directional Verbs added before 來 *lái* or 去 *qù* form a Directional Complement, indicating in which direction the movement of the action results.

Examples:

- (1) 何希請高莉亞從樓下上來。(高莉亞在樓下，何希在樓上)
José asked Gloria to come upstairs. (Gloria was downstairs, José was upstairs).
- (2) 爸爸帶孩子出去玩。(爸爸現在在家)
Dad is taking the kids out to play. (Dad is currently at home).



Directional Verb	來 (towards me)	去 (away from me)
上 up	上來 come up	上去 go up
下 down	下來 come down	下去 go down
進 into	進來 come in	進去 go in
出 out of	出來 come out	出去 go out
回 back to	回來 come back	回去 go back
過 over	過來 come over	過去 go over

(1) 媽媽做好飯了，我們下去吃吧。

Māma zuòhǎo fàn le, wǒmen xiàqù chī ba.

Mom has finished making the meal, let's go down and eat.

(2) 老闆請我進去談談。

Lǎobǎn qǐng wǒ jìnqù tán tán.

The boss asked me to go in and have a talk.

(3) 下雨了，我們別出去吧。

Xià yǔ le, wǒmen bié chūqù ba.

It is raining; let's not go outside.

(4) 何 希：妳今天什麼時候回來？

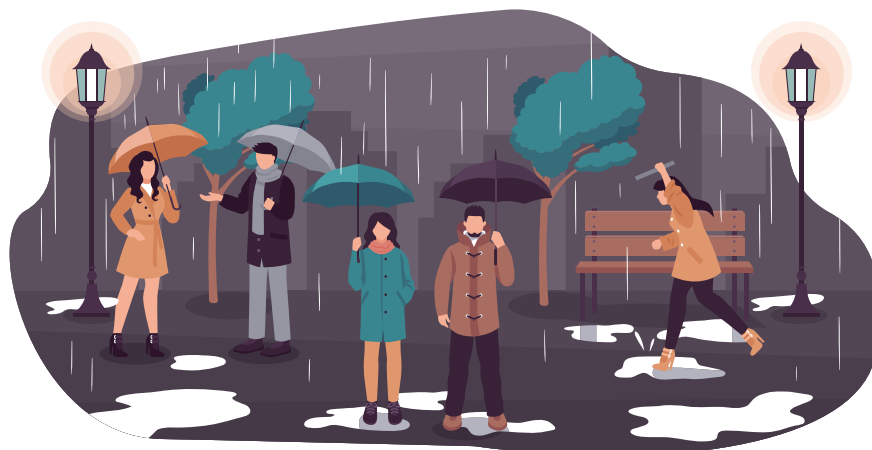
Nǐ jīntiān shénme shíhòu huílái?

When are you coming back today?

高莉亞：我今天要加班，大概七點多回來。

Wǒ jīntiān yào jiābān, dàgài qīdiǎn duō huílái.

I have to work overtime today. I'll probably come back after 7 o'clock.



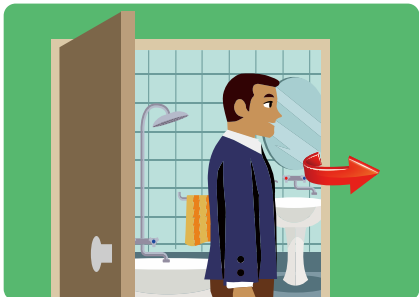


Lesson 09 週末的活動

Exercise

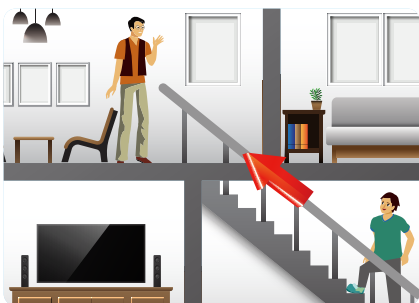
Look at the illustrations, then use the pattern “Directional Verb + 來 *lái* / 去 *qù*” to complete each sentence.

1



➡ 何希從浴室_____。

2



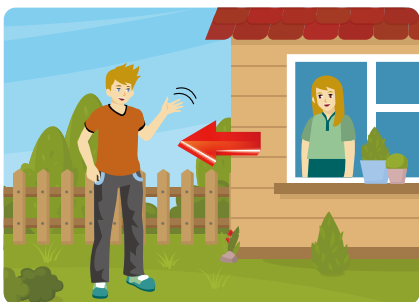
➡ 家文，請你_____，
我有事請你幫忙。

3



➡ 家安，請妳_____，
看看這些資料對不對。

4



➡ Nicole 快_____，
我們去公園玩。

5



➡ 外面太冷了，麗莎不想_____。

2

Action Verb + Directional Verb + 來 lái / 去 qù

Adding an action verb ahead of a Directional Complement (Directional Verb + 來 lái / 去 qù) expresses an action performed by subject and the directional result of that action (Example 1).

Note: If the action verb is followed by a place name, the place name should be inserted between the Directional Verb and + 來 / 去 and not after 來 lái / 去 qù (Example 2).

Examples:

(1) 妹妹從樓上走下來，然後跑出去玩了。

My [younger] sister went downstairs and then ran outside to play.

(2) 公司的電腦，我不能帶回家去。（*我不能帶回去家 incorrect）

I cannot bring a company computer home.

Action Verb	Directional Verb + 來 (towards me)	Directional Verb + 去 (away from me)
走	上來 come up	上去 go up
跑	下來 come down	下去 go down
拿	進來 come in	進去 go in
爬	出來 come out	出去 go out
帶	回來 come back	回去 go back
搬	過來 come over	過去 go over
開		

(1) 爸爸割完了草，從院子走進來休息。

Bàba gēwán le cǎo, cóng yuànzǐ zǒu jìnlái xiūxi.

After father finished mowing the lawn, he came inside from the yard to take a break.

(2) 那個小孩子是從哪裡跑回來的？

Nà ge xiǎoháizi shì cóng nǎlǐ pǎo huílái de?

From where did that kid come running back?

(3) 林老師坐在那裡，我走過去跟她說話。

Lín lǎoshī zuò zài nàlǐ, wǒ zǒu guòqù gēn tā shuōhuà.

Teacher Lin is sitting there. I will go over and talk to her.

(4) 你的車不可以開進學校來。

Nǐ de chē bù kěyǐ kāi jìn xuéxiào lái.

You cannot drive your car into the school area.





Lesson 09 週末的活動

Exercise

After looking at the illustrations, use the pattern “V+DV+ 來 *lái* / 去 *qù*” to complete each sentence.

1



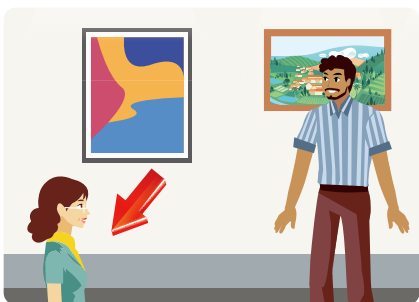
➡ 他們從山下_____，
爬了兩個小時。（爬）

2



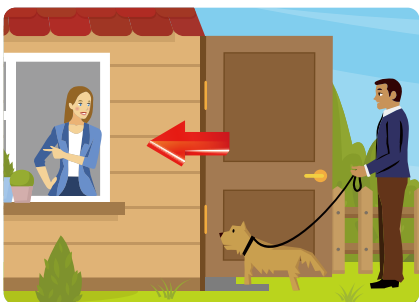
➡ Frank 看到爸爸回來，
就_____了。（跑）

3



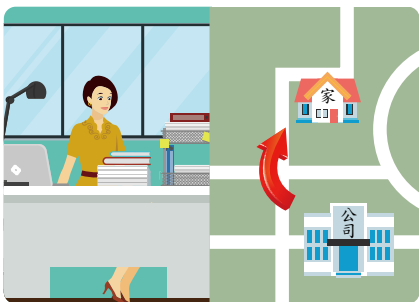
➡ 林老師：杜翔，麻煩你幫我
_____，好不好？（拿）

4



➡ 何 希：狗可以帶進去嗎？
高莉亞：狗還沒洗澡，不要
_____。（帶）

5



➡ 那些資料還沒整理好，家安要
_____整理。（帶）

3

Topic Sentences

In Mandarin, when a person, thing or event forms a topic at the front of a sentence that is then commented upon, this signals emphasis, explanation or assessment of the topic. If the person, thing or event in the topic being commented upon is plural, 都 *dōu* must be added to complete the sentence (Example 3).

Examples:

- (1) 這張貓的照片，我覺得很好看。

This picture of a cat I think is really good-looking.

- (2) A：你喜歡烏龍茶，還是紅茶？

Do you prefer oolong tea or black tea?

B：烏龍茶，我很喜歡；紅茶，我不喜歡。

Oolong tea, I like; black tea, I don't care for.

- (3) A：你的中文課有哪些國家的人？

Your Mandarin class has people from what countries?

B：美國人、日本人都有。

Americans and Japanese, it has them both.

- (1) 這些德文資料，你看得懂看不懂？

Zhèxiē Déwén zīliào, nǐ kàn de dǒng kàn bù dǒng?

This information in German, can you read and understand it?

- (2) 南瓜派和烤肉，何希都吃完了。

Nánguāpài hàn kǎoròu, Héxī dōu chīwán le.

As for the pumpkin pie and roast, José ate up both of them.

- (3) 張家安：你有兄弟姊妹嗎？

Nǐ yǒu xiōngdì jěimèi ma?

Do you have any brothers or sisters?

杜 翔：哥哥、弟弟，我都有，可是沒有姊姊、妹妹。

Gēge, dìdi, wǒ dōu yǒu, kěshì méiyǒu jiějie, mèimei.

I have [older and younger] brothers, but no [older or younger] sisters.

- (4) 張家安：阿姨，我可以幫妳做什麼？

Āyí, wǒ kěyǐ bāng nǐ zuò shénme?

Auntie, what can I help you do?

阿 姨：桌子和椅子，妳都擦一擦吧。

Zhuōzi hàn yǐzi, nǐ dōu cā yì cā ba.

Wipe clean the table and chairs.





Lesson 09 週末的活動

Exercise

Use a topic sentence pattern to complete the sentences.

1 張家安整理好了這些資料。

➡ _____，張家安都整理好了。

2 我喜歡狗，不喜歡貓。

➡ _____，我喜歡；_____，我不喜歡。

3 你喜歡打掃房子嗎？

➡ _____，我喜歡；但是_____，

我不喜歡。

4 你聽得懂法文和德文嗎？

➡ _____，我都聽不懂。

5 我想去紐約玩一玩，那裡貴不貴？

➡ 吃的、喝的，_____。



4

把 bǎ Construction: 把 bǎ + O + V + DV 來 lái / 去 qù

There is no direct equivalent of 把 bǎ in English, but it is similar to the idea in English of (a subject) taking something (an object) and doing something to / with it that changes the status of the object and produces a different result (Example 1). The preposition 把 bǎ is broadly used in Mandarin. In this lesson, we will first learn the pattern 把 [N 事物] + V + DV + 來 lái / 去 qù.

Notes:

1. The object following 把 bǎ must be definite, that is, a clearly known object, it cannot be used to mark broadly a class of objects or an indefinite element within that class. As in Example 2, we know that the paintings being described are all those hanging on the living room wall. The preposition 把 bǎ would not be used to refer to one of those paintings, as opposed to the entire set that are known to be hanging on the wall of that room, as it would be unclear which one was being dusted.
2. To negate sentences featuring the preposition 把 bǎ, the negative marker 沒 méi, 不 bù, or 別 bié are placed before 把 bǎ (Example 3).

Examples:

- (1) Frank 把烤肉的東西都拿出去了。(從房子裡面拿到院子)
Frank brought out the grilling stuff. (Took it from the house to the yard)
- (2) 媽媽把畫拿下來擦一擦。
Mom took down the paintings and wiped them [clean].
- (3) A: 我可以把狗帶出去散步嗎?
Can I take the dog out for a walk?
B: 下雨了, 別把狗帶出去散步。
It's raining, don't take the dog out for a walk.



- (1) 請你把這些垃圾拿出去。

Qǐng nǐ bǎ zhèxiē lè sè ná chū qù.

Please take this trash out.

- (2) 我沒時間上樓去, 麻煩你把資料拿下來, 好嗎?

Wǒ méi shíjiān shàng lóu qù, máfán nǐ bǎ zīliào ná xià lái, hǎo ma?

I don't have any time to go upstairs, could I trouble you to bring the data down here?

- (3) 服務員把客人點的咖啡送過去。

Fúwùyuán bǎ kèrén diǎn de kāfēi sòng guò qù.

The waiter brought the coffee that the guest ordered.

- (4) 老闆對我說: 「你可以把公司的車開回家去。」

Lǎobǎn duì wǒ shuō: "Nǐ kěyǐ bǎ gōngsī de chē kāi huí jiā qù."

The boss told me, "You may drive the company car home."



Lesson 09 週末的活動

Exercise

Use the preposition 把 *bǎ* to complete each sentence.

1 這些甜點，高莉亞都想帶回去。

➡ 高莉亞想把_____。

2 搬家的時候，桌子和椅子我都要搬過去。

➡ 搬家的時候，我要把_____。
_____。

3 客廳剛打掃好，你的運動鞋不可以穿進來。

➡ 客廳剛打掃好，你不可以_____。
_____。

4 經理：麗莎，我想再看看明天要談的合約，請妳拿進來給我。

➡ 麗莎：好，我馬上_____。
_____。

5 王明文：我現在不舒服，不能開車，你可以順便帶我回去嗎？

➡ 同事小王：沒問題，我可以順便_____。
_____。



綜合活動

Classroom Activities

1. Read aloud



高莉亞：我回來了。何希，你在哪裡？

何 希：我在樓上書房。

高莉亞：請你下來，我有事跟你說。

何 希：我在整理資料，妳上來吧。

（高莉亞走到樓上）

高莉亞：我姊姊說她下個星期要去紐約出差，沒有人幫她照顧孩子，想請我們照顧一下。

何 希：孩子們是週末來我們家吧？

高莉亞：是。他們來這裡會不會讓你覺得麻煩？

何 希：不會。但是我們每個週末都要打掃房子，就讓他們一起幫忙吧。

高莉亞：沒問題，Frank 平常就喜歡幫他爸爸割草。有 Nicole 幫忙，那些畫跟照片，我就可以拿下來好好地擦一擦。

何 希：我們打掃完了，在院子烤肉，好不好？

高莉亞：孩子們一定喜歡烤肉，他們可以幫忙把烤肉的東西拿出去。

何 希：週末都在家有一點無聊，我們星期天帶他們出去玩玩吧！

高莉亞：好啊！上午去附近的小山玩玩。我們爬上去，在山上看看風景再慢慢地走下來，大概要兩個多小時。

何 希：下個週末社區好像有棒球比賽，下山以後，我們就帶他們去看比賽。

高莉亞：好，Frank 非常喜歡打棒球。

何 希：我想我們這樣安排，會讓他們很開心。

2. Fill in the blanks

Based on the preceding dialogue, fill in the missing words of each sentence with the appropriate characters or pinyin.

高莉亞：我回來了。何希，你在哪裡？

何 希：我在樓上_____。

高莉亞：請你下來，我有事跟你說。

何 希：我在_____資料，妳上來吧。



(高莉亞走到樓上)

高莉亞：我姊姊說她下個星期要去紐約出差，沒有人幫她照顧孩子，

想請我們_____一下。

何 希：孩子們是_____來我們家吧？

高莉亞：是。他們來這裡會不會讓你覺得麻煩？

何 希：不會。但是我們每個週末都要_____房子，就讓他們
一起幫忙吧。

高莉亞：沒問題，Frank 平常就喜歡幫他爸爸割草。有 Nicole 幫忙，

那些_____跟照片，我就可以_____好好地擦
一_____。

何 希：我們打掃完了，在院子_____，好不好？

高莉亞：孩子們一定喜歡烤肉，他們可以幫忙_____烤肉的東西拿出去。

何 希：週末都在家有一點_____，我們星期天帶他們出去玩
玩吧！

高莉亞：好啊！上午去附近的_____玩玩。我們_____
_____，在山上看看風景再慢慢地走下來，_____要
兩個多小時。

何 希：下個週末社區好像有棒球_____，下山以後，我們就
帶他們去看比賽。

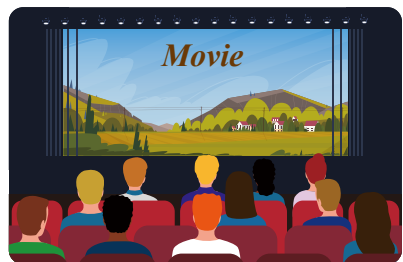
高莉亞：好，Frank 非常喜歡_____。

何 希：我想我們這樣_____，會讓他們很開心。

3. Pair up with a classmate, then ask each other the following questions, replying with how you keep tidy the place where you live.

- ① 你喜歡打掃房子嗎？為什麼？
- ② 你多久打掃一次房子？
- ③ 你會打掃哪些地方？
- ④ 你最不喜歡打掃的地方是哪裡？為什麼？
- ⑤ 你怎麼把最不喜歡打掃的地方打掃乾淨（gānjìng, clean）？

4. Plan a weekend activity for your family, and tell everyone in class the details of the activity. You may use the following illustrations and sentences to help you describe it.



- ① 周末的時候，我想做_____（活動 / 事情）。
- ② _____（活動 / 事情），要在
_____做。



Lesson 09 週末的活動

3 我會 / 不會請_____（朋友或親戚）來參加，因為_____。

4 安排_____（活動 / 事情），我需要準備_____。

5 我希望週末_____（活動 / 事情），能讓_____。

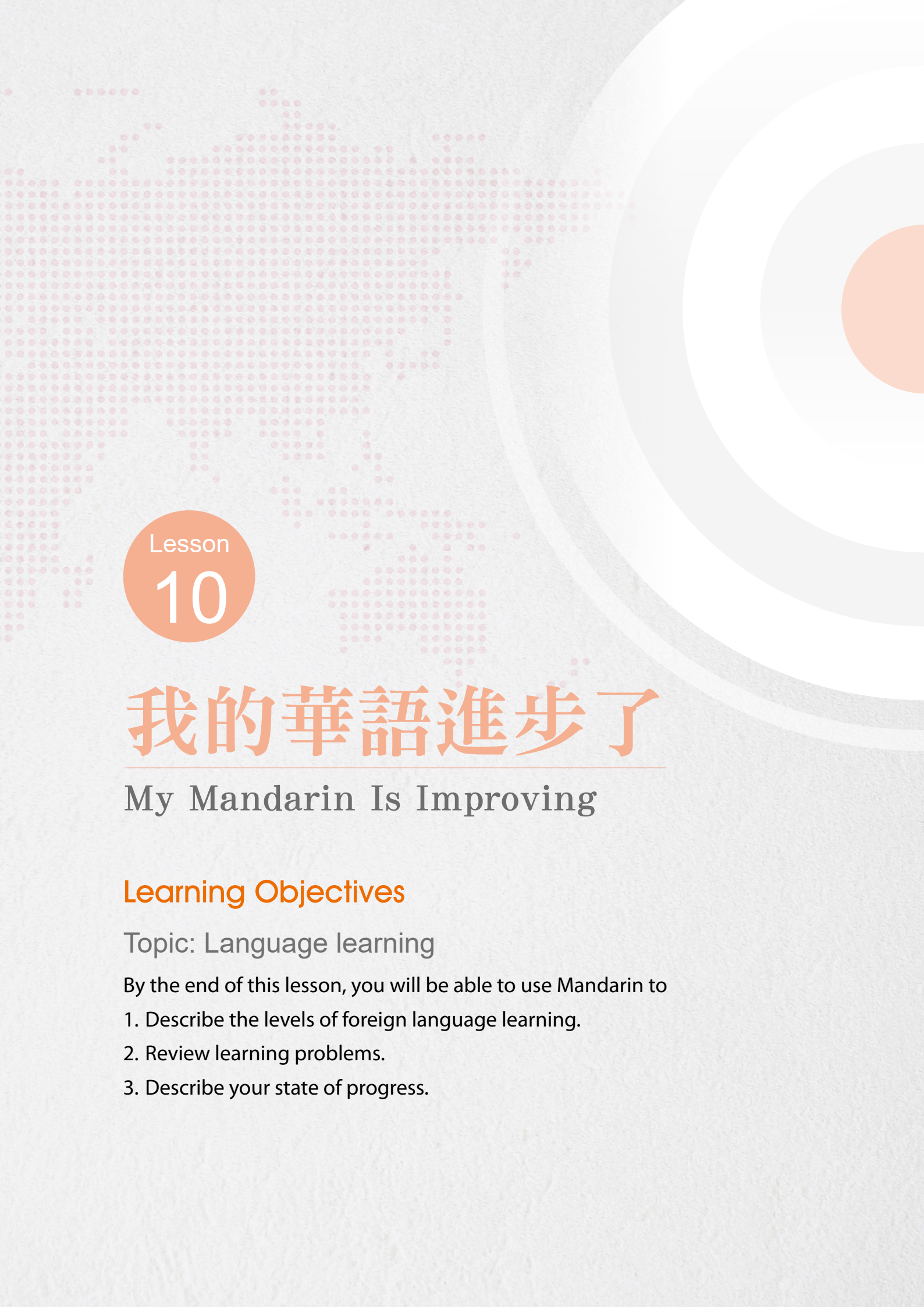
5. Look at the illustrations and answer the questions.



- 1 狗，你都不可以帶進去嗎？
- 2 你可以不可以把左邊的狗帶進去？

3F	兒童／玩具／餐廳	
2F	服裝／運動鞋	
1F	化妝品	
B1	超級市場／咖啡廳	

- 1 你在一樓，如果去超級市場，你要走上去，還是走下去？
- 2 你買好了菜，如果想去買一雙運動鞋，你要走到幾樓？



Lesson

10

我的華語進步了

My Mandarin Is Improving

Learning Objectives

Topic: Language learning

By the end of this lesson, you will be able to use Mandarin to

1. Describe the levels of foreign language learning.
2. Review learning problems.
3. Describe your state of progress.



各位同學，這個學期快要結束了。
Gè wèi tóngxué, zhè ge xuéqí kuài yào jiéshù le.

我把最後一次考試的考卷還給大家，
Wǒ bǎ zuìhòu yí cì kǎoshì de kǎojiàn huán gěi dàjiā,
請你們仔細地看看。
qǐng nǐmen zǐxì de kànkàn.



哇！好緊張，不知道我考得怎麼樣。
Wa! Hǎo jǐnzhāng, bù zhīdào wǒ kǎo de zěnmeyàng.



妳是最用功的學生，放心吧。
Nǐ shì zuì yònggōng de xuéshēng, fàngxīn ba.



這學期開始的時候，我記得自己
Zhè xuéqí kāishǐ de shíhòu, wǒ jìde zìjǐ

常常寫錯字。這次我只寫錯了兩個
chángcháng xiěcuò zì. Zhè cì wǒ zhǐ xiěcuò le liǎng ge

字，聽力跟寫字的能力都進步了，
zì, tīnglì gēn xiězì de nénglì dōu jìnbù le,

真開心！
zhēn kāixīn!



我^我覺^覺得^得漢^漢字^字太^太難^難寫^寫了^了，說^說話^話比^比較^較。
Wǒ juéde hànzi tài nán xiě le, shuōhuà bǐjiào

容^容易^易。現^現在^在我^我說^說得^得比^比以^以前^前流^流利^利，
róngyì. Xiànzài wǒ shuō de bǐ yǐqián liúlì,

也^也能^能說^說更^更長^長的^的句^句子^子。
yě néng shuō gèng cháng de jùzi.



我^我最^最近^近常^常常^常出^出差^差，沒^沒有^有太^太多^多的^的時^時間^間。
Wǒ zuìjìn chángcháng chūchāi, méiyǒu tài duō de shíjiān

寫^寫作^作業^業，所^所以^以考^考得^得不^不太^太好^好。但^但是^是我^我。
xiě zuòyè, suǒyǐ kǎo de bú tài hǎo. Dànshì wǒ

認^認識^識的^的字^字比^比以^以前^前多^多了^了，聲^聲調^調也^也比^比。
rènshì de zì bǐ yǐqián duō le, shēngdiào yě bǐ

以^以前^前正^正確^確了^了。
yǐqián zhèngquè le.



你^你們^們上^上課^課都^都很^很認^認真^真，考^考試^試的^的成^成績^績也^也。
Nǐmen shàngkè dōu hěn rènzhēn, kǎoshì de chéngjī yě

不^不錯^錯，只^只要^要繼^繼續^續學^學習^習，你^你們^們的^的中^中文^文。
búcuò, zhǐyào jìxù xuéxí, nǐmen de Zhōngwén

一^一定^定越^越來^來越^越好^好。
yíding yuèlái yuè hǎo.



我^我很^很喜^喜歡^歡學^學中^中文^文，學^學中^中文^文不^不但^但有^有趣^趣，
Wǒ hěn xǐhuān xué Zhōngwén, xué Zhōngwén búdàn yǒuqù,

而^而且^且很^很有^有用^用，我^我會^會努^努力^力地^地學^學習^習。
érqiě hěn yǒuyòng, wǒ huì nǔlì de xuéxí.



我^我同^同意^意杜^杜翔^翔的^的想^想法^法。我^我的^的主^主管^管告^告訴^訴。
Wǒ tóngyì Dùxiáng de xiǎngfǎ. Wǒ de zhǔguǎn gàosù

我^我，因^因為^為我^我會^會說^說中^中文^文，所^所以^以公^公司^司。
wǒ, yīnwèi wǒ huì shuō Zhōngwén, suǒyǐ gōngsī

可^可能^能把^把我^我派^派到^到台^台灣^灣去^去工^工作^作。
kěnéng bǎ wǒ pài dào Táiwān qù gōngzuò.



如果妳去臺灣，可以一邊工作，
Rúguǒ nǐ qù Táiwān, kěyǐ yíbiān gōngzuò,
一邊學中文，妳的中文一定會進步。
yíbiān xué Zhōngwén, nǐ de Zhōngwén yíding huì jìnbù

得很快。
de hěn kuài.



沒錯，臺灣是一個很適合學中文的
Méicuò, Táiwān shì yí ge hěn shìhé xué Zhōngwén de

地方，有很多好的老師和學校。
dìfāng, yǒu hěn hǎo de lǎoshī hàn xuéxiào.



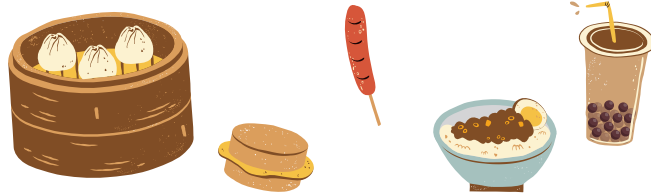
我聽說臺灣不但有很多好玩的地方，
Wǒ tīngshuō Táiwān búdàn yǒu hěn duō hǎowán de dìfāng,

也有很多特別的小吃，而且臺灣人
yě yǒu hěn duō tèbié de xiǎochī, érqiě Táiwān rén

對外國人很友善。
duì wàiguó rén hěn yǒushàn.



聽起來真不錯，我希望能有機會去
Tīng qǐlái zhēn búcuò, wǒ xīwàng néng yǒu jīhuì qù
臺灣看看。
Táiwān kànkàn.



生詞

Vocabulary

- | | | | |
|-------|---------|-----|-------------------------------|
| 1. 進步 | jìnbù | Vs | to make progress, to improve |
| 2. 結束 | jiéshù | V | conclude, come to an end |
| 3. 最後 | zuìhòu | Adv | final |
| 4. 考試 | kǎoshì | V/N | take a test, give a test/test |
| 5. 考卷 | kǎojiàn | N | test paper, test booklet |

6. 還 ^{ㄏㄨㄢˊ}	huán	V	return, give back
7. 仔 ^{ㄗˇ} 細 ^{ㄒㄩˋ}	zǐxì	Vs	careful, meticulous
8. 緊 ^{ㄐㄧㄣˇ} 張 ^{ㄓāng}	jǐnzhāng	Vs	tense, nervous
9. 用 ^{ㄩˋ} 功 ^{ㄍōng}	yònggōng	Vs	studious, hard-working
10. 聽 ^{ㄊㄧㄥ} 力 ^{ㄌㄧˋ}	tīnglì	N	listening comprehension
11. 能 ^{ㄋéng} 力 ^{ㄌㄧˋ}	nénglì	N	ability, capability
12. 漢 ^{ㄏàn} 字 ^{ㄘㄩˋ}	hànzì	N	Chinese characters
13. 流 ^{ㄌㄧㄡˊ} 利 ^{ㄌㄧˋ}	liúli	Vs	fluent
14. 更 ^{ㄍèng}	gèng	Adv	[even] more [Adj], [Adj]er
15. 句 ^{ㄐㄩˋ} 子 ^{ㄘㄩˇ}	jùzi	N	sentence
16. 作 ^{ㄗㄨㄛˋ} 業 ^{ㄜˋ}	zuòyè	N	homework
17. 聲 ^{ㄕㄨㄥ} 調 ^{ㄉㄠˊ}	shēngdiào	N	tone
18. 正 ^{ㄓèng} 確 ^{ㄑㄩㄝˊ}	zhèngquè	Vs	accurate
19. 成 ^{ㄔéng} 績 ^{ㄐㄧˊ}	chéngjī	N	grades, report card
20. 學 ^{ㄒué} 習 ^{ㄒㄧˊ}	xuéxí	V	learn
21. 不 ^{ㄅù} 但 ^{ㄉㄢˋ}	búdàn	Conj	not only...
22. 而 ^{ér} 且 ^{ㄑㄩˇ}	érqiě	Conj	but also...
23. 努 ^{ㄋǔ} 力 ^{ㄌㄧˋ}	nǔlì	Vs	work hard at [doing something]
24. 同 ^{ㄊóng} 意 ^{ㄧˋ}	tóngyì	V	agree
25. 想 ^{ㄒㄩㄥˋ} 法 ^{ㄈㄢˋ}	xiǎngfǎ	N	way of thinking, thoughts



Lesson 10 我的華語進步了

26. 主 ^主 管 ^管	zhǔguǎn	N	supervisor
27. 適 ^適 合 ^合	shìhé	Vs	be appropriate
28. 小 ^小 吃 ^吃	xiǎochī	N	snacks
29. 友 ^友 善 ^善	yǒushàn	Vs	kind, friendly, courteous

短語

Phrases

30. 沒 ^沒 錯 ^錯	méicuò	That's true, you have that right	
31. 外 ^外 國 ^國 人 ^人	wàiguó rén	foreigner	

補充生詞

Supplementary Vocabulary

32. 放 ^放	fàng	V	place [somewhere], let go of
--------------------	------	---	------------------------------

語法

Grammar

1 S + 把 bǎ + O + V 給 / V 到 / V 在

The preposition 把 *bǎ* in this lesson is used with the previously learned sentence pattern V 給 / V 到 / V 在. Without the preposition 把 *bǎ*, the pattern depicts a fact or situation (Example 1). Use of the preposition 把 *bǎ* stresses that the subject has in some aspect disposed of the object, often in the sense of relocating it (Example 2, Example 3 and Example 4).

Examples:

(1) 王明文送給弟弟一件外套。

Wang Mingwen gave his [younger] brother a coat.

◎ S 把 + O + V 給 + N (人)

(2) 王明文把那件外套送給弟弟了。

Wang Mingwen gave that coat to his [younger] brother.

◎ S 把 + O + V 到 + N (地方)

(3) 公司把高莉亞派到臺灣分公司工作。

The company sent Gloria to work in its Taiwan branch office.

◎ S 把 + O + V 在 + N (地方)

(4) 杜翔把資料存在電腦裡面。

Dushaynt saved the data onto a computer.

(1) 我應該把這份合約拿給主管看看。

Wǒ yīnggāi bǎ zhè fèn héyuē ná gěi zhǔguǎn kànkàn.

I should give this contract to my supervisor to look over.

(2) 王老闆還沒把公司搬到南部，他打算明年再搬。

Wáng lǎobǎn hái méi bǎ gōngsī bān dào nánbù, tā dǎsuàn míngnián zài bān.

Proprietor Wang has not yet moved the company down south. He plans to make the move next year.

(3) 很多人喜歡把錢存在銀行裡面。

Hěn duō rén xǐhuān bǎ qián cún zài yínháng lǐmiàn.

Many people like to deposit their money in a bank.

(4) 你把書還給麗莎了嗎？

Nǐ bǎ shū huán gěi Lìshā le ma?

Have you returned the book to Lisa?



Exercise

Use the 把 + O + V 給 / V 在 / V 到 pattern to revise the following sentences.

1 這包烏龍茶，王明文想送給高莉亞。

➡ 王明文_____。

2 麗莎的車賣給張家安了。

➡ 麗莎_____。

3 老闆說：「狗，你們不可以帶到公司。」

➡ 老闆說：「你們_____。」



Lesson 10 我的華語進步了

4 何 希：我擦了桌子以後，桌子要搬到哪裡去？

➡ 高莉亞：你擦了桌子以後，_____。

5 烤好的火雞，高莉亞放在桌子上面。

➡ 高莉亞_____。

6 學生：老師，今天的作業要寫在哪裡？

➡ 老師：你們_____。

2

不知道…… bùzhīdào... don't know if..., wonder if...

不知道 *bùzhīdào*... indicates a question, often a rhetorical question. Sometime an answer is expected, other times it is not. In English, the direct translation “I don’t know if...” often works, but at times “I wonder if...” is more natural when the question is rhetorical in nature. When 不知道 *bùzhīdào*... begins a sentence, the subject “我” is usually omitted (Example 1).

Note: When using this expression, the latter part of the sentence must use one of two forms, either A + not + A (Example 2), or 怎麼樣、怎麼 V、QW (什麼) . (Example 3).

Examples:

(1) (我) 不知道我考得好不好。

I don’t know if I tested well or not.

(2) 不知道 + A (V/Vs) + not (不 / 沒) + A (V/Vs) ……。

不知道他想不想去臺灣學中文。

I don’t know if he is thinking of going to Taiwan to learn Mandarin, or not.

(3) 不知道 + ……怎麼樣。

下星期要考試，不知道大家準備得怎麼樣。

Next week we will have a test. I don’t know how well prepared everyone is.



(1) 杜 翔：不知道老師明天會不會考試。

Bùzhīdào lǎoshī míngtiān huì bú huì kǎoshì.

I wonder if the teacher is going to give us a test tomorrow.

張家安：我想不會，因為我們還沒學完這一課。

Wǒ xiǎng bú huì, yīnwèi wǒmen hái méi xuéwán zhè yí kè.

I think not, since we have not yet finished learning this lesson.

(2) 張家安：我要去出差，不知道歐洲的天氣怎麼樣。

Wǒ yào qù chūchāi, bùzhīdào Ōuzhōu de tiānqì zěnmeyàng.

I have to go on a business trip. I wonder how the weather is in Europe.

王小姐：聽說最近越來越冷。

Tīngshuō zuìjìn yuèláiyuè lěng.

I heard that it is getting colder recently.

(3) 何希買了一條裙子送給高莉亞，不知道她喜歡不喜歡。

Héxī mǎile yì tiáo qúnzi sònggěi Gāo Liyǎ, bùzhīdào tā xǐhuān bù xǐhuān.

José bought a skirt to give Gloria, but doesn't know if she will like it or not.

(4) 那塊蛋糕看起來很好吃，但是不知道味道怎麼樣。

Nà kuài dāngāo kàn qǐlái hěn hǎochī, dànshì bùzhīdào wèidào zěnmeyàng.

That piece of cake looks delicious, but I don't know how it tastes.

Exercise

Read the situation presented by each sentence, then use the phrase 不知道…… to complete the sentence.

例：我要出門，想知道要不要穿外套。

➡ 不知道外面冷不冷。

➡ 不知道外面天氣怎麼樣。



① 我買禮物送給高莉亞，我希望她喜歡這個禮物。

➡ 不知道_____。

② 林老師很想學法文，但是聽說法文很難，不容易學好。

➡ 林老師_____。



Lesson 10 我的華語進步了

3 高莉亞學了中文，想到臺灣分公司工作，又怕壓力太大。

➡ 在臺灣工作，
_____。

4 下了課以後，杜翔想問大家有沒有時間去喝咖啡，聊聊天。

➡ 我們下課了，
_____。

5 張先生看到一個他覺得有趣的工作，但是怕要常加班、壓力太大。

➡ 那個工作看起來很有趣，
_____。

3 Adverb 更 gèng comparative adverb (more [adj], [adj]er)

The adverb 更 gèng signifies a greater degree of an adjectival quality compared to an implied original definite degree of that quality.

Examples:

(1) 他能說更長句子了。(他已經能說長句子，現在說得比以前更長了。)

He [now] can speak longer sentences. (He can speak long sentences, and speaks longer sentences than before.)

(2) 今天天氣很冷，氣象報告說明天可能更冷。

The weather today is very cold, the weather report says that it may be even colder tomorrow.

(1) 我姐姐不喜歡打掃房子，更不喜歡割草。

Wǒ jiějie bù xǐhuān dǎsǎo fángzi, gèng bù xǐhuān gēcǎo.

My [older] sister does not like cleaning house, and dislikes mowing the lawn even more.

(2) 考試的時候，你別緊張，要不然壓力更大了。

Kǎoshì de shíhòu, nǐ bié jǐnzhāng, yàobùrán yālì gēng dà le.

When taking a test, don't be anxious; otherwise the pressure will be even greater.

- (3) 高莉亞學到這本書以後，她更用功了。

Gāo Liyǎ xué dào zhè běn shū yǐhòu, tā gèng yònggōng le.

After Gloria mastered this book, she was even more studious.



- (4) 雖然 Frank 覺得玩電腦遊戲有趣，但是更喜歡打棒球。

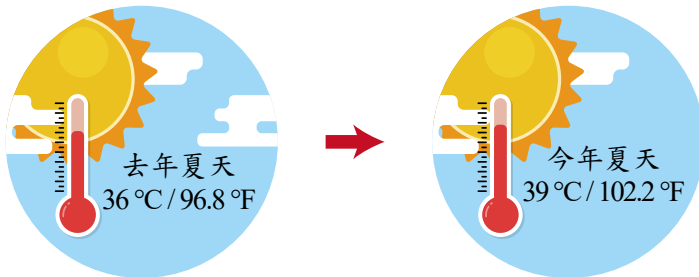
Suīrán Frank juéde wán diànnǎo yóuxì yǒuqù, dànshì gèng xǐhuān dǎ bàngqiú.

Although Frank feels that playing computer games is interesting, he likes playing baseball even more.

Exercise

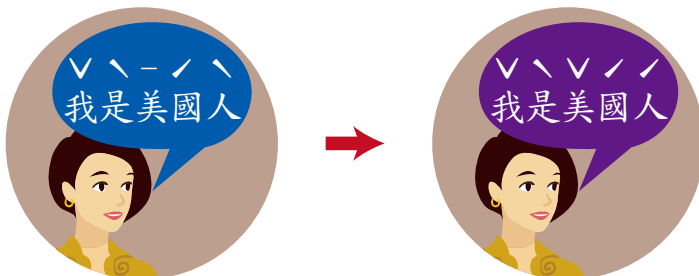
Look at the illustrations, then use “更” to complete each sentence.

1



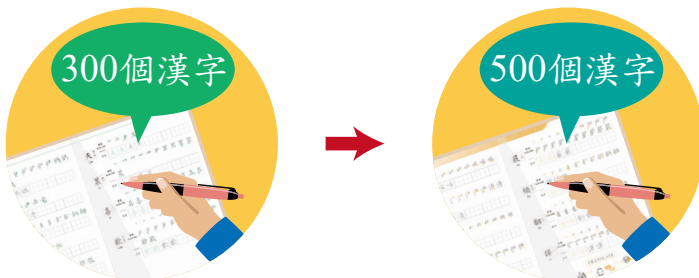
➡ 今年夏天天氣_____。

2



➡ 張家安的聲調說得_____。

3

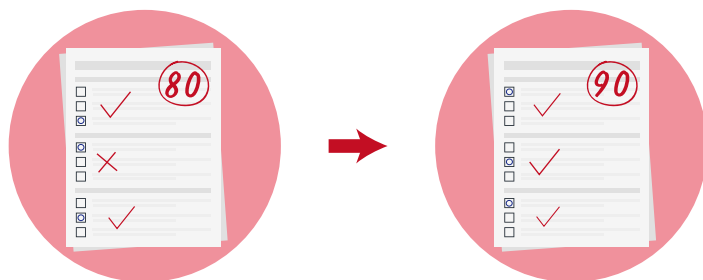


➡ 高莉亞會寫的字_____。



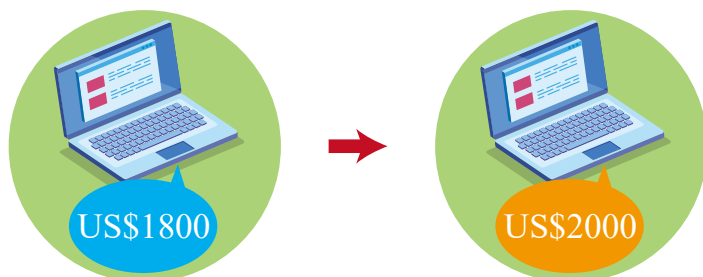
Lesson 10 我的華語進步了

4



➡ 杜翔考試的成績_____。

5



➡ 電腦的價錢_____。

4

不但……，而且…… búdàn..., érqiě... not only..., but also...

The pattern 不但 *búdàn*..., 而且 *érqiě*... links together two clauses, the latter of which signifies a greater degree of the quality being expressed. If the subject of the two clauses is the same, it occurs before the 不但 *búdàn* (Example 1 and Example 2). If the subject of the two clauses is not the same, the subject appears after 不但 *búdàn* (Example 3).

Examples:

(1) 烏龍茶不但很香，而且很好喝。

Oolong tea is not only fragrant; but also good tasting.

(2) 張家安去出差，不但跟其他公司談好了合作，而且去看了阿姨。

Joann Zhang went on a business trip not only to discuss cooperation with other companies, but also to see her aunt.

(3) 他的中文進步了，不但聲調比較正確了，而且說話說得更流利了。

His Mandarin is improving; not only are his tones relatively accurate, but also he speaks more fluently [than before].

(1) 這個週末，他們不但要整理客廳，而且要打掃院子。

Zhè ge zhōumò, tāmen búdàn yào zhěnglǐ kètīng, érqiě yào dǎsǎo yuànzǐ.

This weekend, they not only want to clean the living room, but also want to tidy up the yard.

- (2) 去臺灣學中文，不但能了解臺灣文化，而且能認識臺灣朋友。

Qù Táiwān xué Zhōngwén, búdàn néng liǎojiě Táiwān wénhuà, érqiě néng rènshì Táiwān péngyǒu.

Going to Taiwan to learn Mandarin allows you to not only gain an understanding of Taiwan's culture, but also get to know some Taiwanese friends.

- (3) 那個城市的交通很好，不但地鐵方便，而且公車也方便。

Nà ge chéngshì de jiāotōng hěn hǎo, búdàn dìtiě fāngbiàn, érqiě gōngchē yě fāngbiàn.

Transportation in that city is very good, not only is the subway convenient, but also buses are convenient.

- (4) 張先生寫錯了合約，不但被主管罵了，而且也被老闆罵了。

Zhāng xiānshēng xiěcuò le héyǔē, búdàn bèi zhǔguǎn mà le, yě bèi lǎobǎn mà le.

Mr. Zhang miswrote a contract. He was not only scolded by his supervisor, but also reprimanded by the boss.

Exercise

Use the pattern “不但……，而且……” to complete the following sentences.

- 1 杜 翔：臺灣小吃怎麼樣？

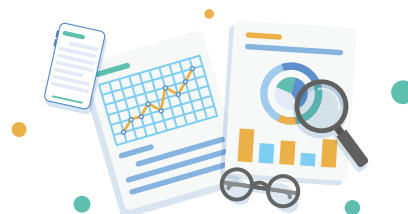
王明文：臺灣小吃，不但好吃，而且_____。

- 2 林老師：運動對妳有什麼好處？

張家安：每天運動不但讓我身體健康，而且_____。

- 3 王小姐：那份資料你怎麼看了那麼久？

杜 翔：我不但要把每個句子都看清楚，而且_____。





Lesson 10 我的華語進步了

4 王家文：你的同事對你怎麼樣？

王明文：他們不但_____，
而且_____。

5 高莉亞：妳的老闆為什麼派妳去歐洲出差？

張家安：他不但想_____，
而且也想_____。

綜合活動

Classroom Activities



1. Read aloud

林老師：各位同學，這個學期快要結束了。我把最後一次考試的考卷還給大家，請你們仔細地看看。

高莉亞：哇！好緊張，不知道我考得怎麼樣。

杜翔：妳是最用功的學生，放心吧。

高莉亞：這學期開始的時候，我記得自己常常寫錯字。這次我只寫錯了兩個字，聽力跟寫字的能力都進步了，真開心！

杜翔：我覺得漢字太難寫了，說話比較容易。現在我說得比以前流利，也能說更長的句子。

張家安：我最近常常出差，沒有太多的時間寫作業，所以考得不太好。但是我認識的字比以前多了，聲調也比以前正確了。

林老師：你們上課都很認真，考試的成績也不錯，只要繼續學習，你們的中文一定越來越好。

杜翔：我很喜歡學中文，學中文不但有趣，而且很有用，我會努力地學習。

高莉亞：我同意杜翔的想法。我的主管告訴我，因為我會說中文，所以公司可能把我派到臺灣去工作。

張家安：如果妳去臺灣，可以一邊工作，一邊學中文，妳的中文一定會進步得很快。

林老師：沒錯，臺灣是一個很適合學中文的地方，有很好的老師和學校。

杜 翔：我聽說臺灣不但有很多好玩的地方，也有很多特別的小吃，而且臺灣人對外國人很友善。

高莉亞：聽起來真不錯，我希望能有機會去臺灣看看。



2. Fill in the blanks

Based on the preceding dialogue, fill in the missing words of each sentence with the appropriate characters or pinyin.

林老師：各位同學，這個學期快要_____了。我把最後一次
_____的考卷還給大家，請你們_____地看看。

高莉亞：哇！好_____，不知道我考得怎麼樣。

杜 翔：妳是最_____的學生，放心吧。

高莉亞：這學期開始的時候，我記得自己常常寫_____字。這次我只
寫錯了兩個字，_____跟寫字的_____都
_____了，真開心！

杜 翔：我覺得漢字太難寫了，說話比較容易。現在我說得比以前
_____，也能說更長的_____。

張家安：我最近常常出差，沒有太多的時間寫_____，所以考
得不太好。但是我認識的字比以前多了，聲調也比以前
_____了。

林老師：你們上課都很認真，考試的_____也不錯，只要繼續
_____，你們的中文一定越來越好。

杜 翔：我很喜歡學中文，學中文_____有趣，_____
很有用，我會_____地學習。



Lesson 10 我的華語進步了

高莉亞：我_____杜翔的_____。我的_____告

訴我，因為我會說中文，所以公司可能把我派到臺灣去工作。

張家安：如果妳去臺灣，可以一邊工作，一邊學中文，妳的中文一定會進步得很快。

林老師：_____，臺灣是一個很_____學中文的地方，
有很好的老師和學校。

杜 翔：我聽說臺灣不但有很多好玩的地方，也有很多特別的_____
_____，而且臺灣人對外國人很_____。

高莉亞：聽起來真不錯，我希望能有機會去臺灣看看。

3. Pair up with a classmate and ask each other the following questions. Use each reply to describe your experience with learning a foreign language.

① A：你學過什麼外國語言？

B：_____。

② A：你是在哪裡學的？

B：_____。

③ A：你學了多久？

B：_____。

④ A：你覺得學_____（外語）最難的是什麼？最容易的是什麼？

B：_____。

⑤ A：你的_____（外語）進步了嗎？哪一方面（聽力 / 說話 / 寫字）
進步得最多？

B：_____。

4. Share with everyone your experience with learning Mandarin. You can use the following sentences to help you explain.



① 我是從_____（時間）開始學中文的，我_____（每天、每個星期）
學習中文，到現在已經學了_____（時間）。

② 我學中文，因為_____。我覺得學中文最難的是_____
（說話、聽力、閱讀 (yuèdú, read)、寫字）。最容易的是_____。

③ 學中文的時候，我_____（用功、努力），所以我的中文
_____（進步的情形）。

④ 我_____（要、不要）繼續學中文。因為學中文_____（有趣、
好玩、沒有意思、太難），對我的_____（工作、生活 (shēnghuó, life)）
_____（有幫助 / 沒有幫助、有用 / 沒有用）。

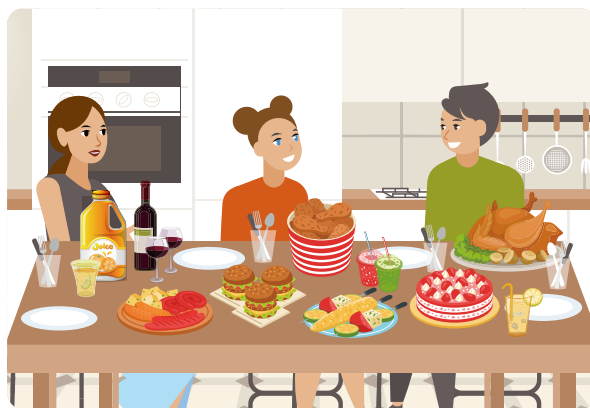


Lesson 10 我的華語進步了

5. Let's see how much your Mandarin has improved! Choose an illustration from those below and create a story based on the theme represented by the illustration you have chosen. The story should include who, what, when, where and why.



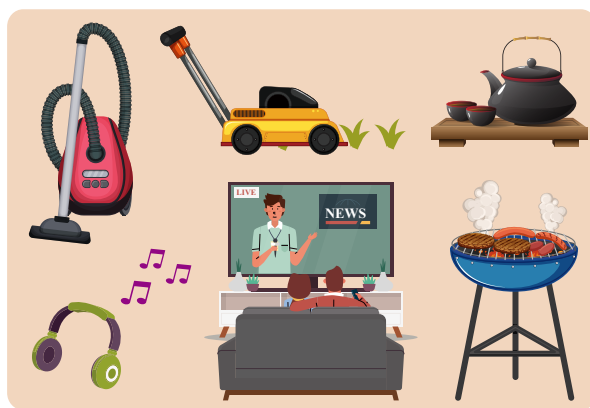
旅行



聚餐 (jùcān)



出差



週末

This image shows a single page from a spiral-bound notebook. The page is white with horizontal ruling lines. In the top left corner, the word "Notes" is written in a blue, cursive font. The left edge of the page features a spiral binding. In the bottom right corner, there is a small, colorful illustration of a yellow saxophone surrounded by several small, colored dots in blue, red, and orange. The page is otherwise blank.





文化單元 (三) Culture Notes

Appellations



平常我叫我的主管林經理，今天我聽到公司有人叫他林大哥。



那個人跟他是朋友吧，或是年紀（*niánjì*, age）比林經理小一點吧。



華人的稱呼（*chēnghū*, appellation）太多了！太難了！



真的不容易，叫錯了很麻煩。

Chinese society attaches great importance to social relations, so whether or not the appropriate salutation is used when addressing someone affects how you and they end up perceiving each other and what kind of relationship you ultimately forge. Thus, how you address someone in Chinese is a complex cultural phenomenon that requires cross-cultural sensitivity and takes time to master. Despite the complexity, some basic principles of how it works are evident from several types of appellations commonly used in everyday life.

Kinship appellations in Chinese, as seen from example sentences in previous lessons, are much more complicated than their English equivalents, primarily because Chinese in many cases distinguishes clearly between paternal and maternal relatives, between generations, comparative age within a generation, and sex. For example: one's brothers and sisters of the same generation are distinguished by older brother (兄 *xiōng*) and younger brother (弟 *dì*); older sister (姊 *jiě*) and younger sister (妹 *mèi*). However, siblings of one's parents do not require this distinction; thus, all of your mother's sisters would be called aunt (阿姨 *āyí*), and all of her brothers would be called uncle (舅舅 *jiùjiu*), regardless of relative age differences between them and your mother. It's a bit more complicated on the paternal side, as your father's sisters would be called aunt (姑姑 *gūgu*) regardless of whether they are older or younger than your father, but his brothers would be called [older] uncle (伯伯 *bóbo*) or [younger] uncle (叔叔 *shúshu*) depending on whether they were older or younger than your father. There are historical reasons for this distinction that we won't go into here.

Let's turn to the workplace next. The main principles behind professional salutations are status and age. Colleagues with a higher status than the speaker should be addressed by their official titles or job description, not by their first names. If the highest ranking executive of a company happens to be a manager surnamed Wang, always address him or her as "Manager Wang" (王經理 *Wáng jīnglǐ*) no matter how long you work for that person. When addressing colleagues who have the same rank as you do in the company, but who have greater seniority or are older than you, a kinship term is best added to their surname or first name. For example, when addressing Wang Mingwen, he would be addressed as "Big Brother Wang" (王大哥 *Wáng dàgē*) or "Bro Mingwen" (明文哥 *Míngwén gē*). Subordinates, or those with less rank, seniority or age than you are directly addressed by first name.

The correct salutations to use in social situations are by far the most complex to master. There are many factors to consider. When addressing elders, to show respect and goodwill, it is usual practice to address them by the highest social or professional position they have held, even if they are retired or no longer hold that position. The most common social faux pas to avoid is addressing a retired school principal as "Mr. Wang" (王先生 *Wáng xiānshēng*) or



“Miss Lin” (林小姐 *Lín xiǎojiě*), instead of politely addressing them as “Principal Wang” (王校長 *Wáng xiàozhǎng*). If the relationship between you and the other party is close and your social or professional status is similar, a salutation that mimics a comparable kinship relation is often used. For example, if the other party is about the same age as your parents, you can add a kinship title after the surname and address them as “Aunt Gao (高阿姨 *Gāo āyí*), [Younger] Uncle Lin (林叔叔 *Lín shúshu*), or [Older] Uncle Wang (王伯伯 *Wáng bóbo*).” If a girl or woman surnamed Gao is about the same age as you, or a little older, you can call her “[Older] Sister Gao (高姐 *Gāo jiě*)”; while if she is younger than you, you can directly call her by their first name.

From the foregoing, the basic principles that Chinese people consider in choosing which salutation to use are relative kinship, professional or social rank, age and sex. These factors determine where each person fits in the social context, with an overarching factor of implied respect for the elderly that still defines the essence of Chinese social relations and culture today.



Lesson 1 Welcoming a New Classmate

(First Day of new term.)

Teacher Lin: Hello everyone, today is the first day of this academic term.

Gloria: Teacher Lin, it has been quite a while since we last saw each other!

Teacher Lin: What did you all do this past summer?

Gloria: I vacationed in Mexico with my husband and had a great time.

Dushyant: Our company is busiest in the summer, I worked overtime virtually every week.

Gloria: You had a really tough time of it!

(Someone knocks on the door.)

Joann Zhang: May I ask, is this Classroom 102?

Teacher Lin: Yes, it is. Please come in. What is it?

Joann Zhang: I have come to take Mandarin class. May I ask, are you Teacher Lin?

Teacher Lin: Yes, I am indeed Teacher Lin. Welcome! Have you taken any Mandarin classes before?

Joann Zhang: I had more than two years of Mandarin class before. Last month, I changed jobs and moved here from the East. I want to go on learning Mandarin.

Teacher Lin: Can you tell us a little bit about yourself?

Joann Zhang: Hello Everyone, my surname is Zhang, Zhāng in Chinese; and my given name is Joann, or Jiā'ān in Chinese. The first syllable of my Chinese name, “jiā,” is the same as the first part of “jiārén (family)”; the second syllable, “ān,” is the same as the second part of “píng'ān” (safe, at peace).” I work at a trading company. My interest is photography, I have collected many photos of birds and cats.

Gloria: Joann Zhang, it is delightful to meet you. My name is Gāo Liyǎ, I work at a company that sells mobile phones.

Teacher Lin: Our new classmate is most welcome. Now, let's begin class.

Lesson 2 The Seaside Scenery Is Beautiful

Lisa: I hear you took a vacation again. How did it go?

Gloria: This time was fun and relaxing.

Lisa: Where did you go and what did you do?

Gloria: We went swimming every day, and one day also took a boat to learn how to dive, we saw all sorts of colors of fish in the sea.

Lisa: That sounds really neat. Is diving hard?

Gloria: It wasn't easy, but the diving instructor was very good, so we quickly got the hang of it.

Lisa: Last weekend was a holiday, were there many people at the beach?

Gloria: There were people everywhere seaside. During the winter here, we all want to go to the beach and sunbathe.

Lisa: How was the hotel where you stayed?

Gloria: The hotel where we stayed was near the beach, you could see it from the hotel. The scenery was gorgeous.

Lisa: I bet it was beautiful at night.

Gloria: Yes, it was! At the beach we took a stroll and gazed at the stars in the sky. It was very relaxing.

Lisa: How did you get there?

Gloria: We took a plane, then, after we arrived, we rented a car to get to the hotel. It was very convenient.

Lisa: I have decided to go vacation there during my next holiday break.

Lesson 3 Thanksgiving Holiday

Lisa: Hi, Gloria! What are you thinking about?

Gloria: Lisa, I'm thinking about how I'm going to spend Thanksgiving.

Lisa: There are only 10 days left from now until Thanksgiving, [so] you had better hurry up and decide.

Gloria: I want to ask over to my house foreigners who cannot go home [for the holiday], spending the holiday together with everyone will be livelier.

Lisa: That is great! Can I take part? I have been very busy lately and have no time to go home for the holiday.

Gloria: You are most welcome! I want to make a lot of food, but I'm afraid there will not be enough time [to make it all]. Can you come [over] a bit early to help?

Lisa: No problem! Ask each of your friends to bring one dish per person, that way there will be a bit less pressure.

Gloria: Your suggestion is a great one. I will prepare the roast turkey, mashed potatoes and salad, then ask friends to bring bread, dessert, beverages and fruit.

Lisa: I will bring pumpkin pie, pumpkin in the Fall is really delicious.

Gloria: I hear that Dushyant really knows how to make bread/rolls, so I'll ask him to bring bread/rolls.

Lisa: Also ask Joann Zhang, she seems to be planning on not going home [for the holiday].

Gloria: If she wants to come, ask her to bring beverages or fruit.

Lisa: Thanksgiving this year will certainly be interesting!

Gloria: I also feel very happy about spending the holiday together with friends.

Lesson 4 The Company Sent Me to Work Here

Wang Mingwen: Hello! May I ask, are you Gloria?

Gloria: I am indeed. And who are you?

Wang Mingwen: I am Wang Mingwen. Do you remember me?

Gloria: Wow! Wang Mingwen, of course I remember. Have you come to the U.S. for travel?

Wang Mingwen: No. Our company sent me to our branch company in the U.S. to work.

Gloria: What company do you work at now?

Wang Mingwen: I work at a technology company. It sent me here because I know a bit about the situation in the U.S.

Gloria: That's great! How long will you be here?

Wang Mingwen: The company hopes that I will be here for at least one year.

Gloria: I know that Taiwan is considerably advanced in the field of computer technology, with many companies that are quite famous.

Wang Mingwen: Yes! Our company cooperates with firms from many nations, and sells its products to various countries around the world.

Gloria: You went back to Taiwan right after you graduated, [so] I [just] assumed that you were working in Taiwan all the while.

Wang Mingwen: Although it was really great in Taiwan, work experience in the U.S. will be helpful to my future.

Gloria: You just got here, is your work busy?

Wang Mingwen: It was very busy the first month, [but] this month is a bit less hectic.

Gloria: Well, when you have a few spare moments, let's find a time to get together.

Lesson 5 Oolong Tea Is Very Aromatic

(Wang Mingwen arranges to get together with Gloria.)

Wang Mingwen: Gloria, have you been busy recently? I would like to get together with you for a chat.

Gloria: I have not been as busy recently as [I was] before. The day after tomorrow is the weekend, and José and I have nothing planned.

Wang Mingwen: I am really delighted that you both can make it. Please come over to my place for tea!

(Wang Mingwen's home, someone knocks at the door.)

Wang Mingwen : Gloria, José, Welcome! Come in.

Gloria: Mingwen, what tea are you drinking? It smells very aromatic.

Wang Mingwen: I am drinking oolong tea. Do you want to try [drinking] it?

Gloria: OK! I have not yet had any Taiwan tea, so could I trouble you for a cup?

Wang Mingwen: No trouble at all! Tea should be drunk with friends. I have oolong tea and black tea, which kind would you like to drink?

Gloria: What is the difference in flavor between these two kinds of tea?

Wang Mingwen: Black tea tastes strong, rich and full-bodied. Oolong tea [when smelled] has a fragrant aroma, but it is lighter in flavor than black tea.

Gloria: José and I like aromatic teas, so we will choose oolong tea.

Wang Mingwen: OK. It takes over two minutes to steep tea, so please wait a moment.

Gloria: When Chinese people drink tea, it seems they do not add anything to it, right?

Wang Mingwen: Yes. You understand the tea-drinking customs of Chinese people, so I need not explain.

Gloria: These tea names are really interesting! Where did you buy them?

Wang Mingwen: I did not buy these teas here, I brought them over from Taiwan. Taiwan's teas are really high quality, as you will realize when you try [drinking] them. What do you think of its flavor?

Gloria: Ah..., it tastes slightly bitter, and slightly sweet. Very distinctive!

Wang Mingwen: What you are drinking this time has a relatively light flavor, yet it is a comparatively aromatic tea. If there is an opportunity, I will invite you to try [drinking] dongfang meiren tea, which has a stronger, richer and more robust flavor.

Lesson 6 My Colleagues Are Very Good to Me

Wang Mingwen: Hello? Jiawen, it is me. Are Dad and Mom OK?

Wang Jiawen: We are all fine. How about you? How is work?

Wang Mingwen: When I first arrived, I was very busy, [so] I often did not finish my work. However, now I have adapted.

Wang Jiawen: Wow! You certainly have a lot of pressure.

Wang Mingwen: It is OK, my colleagues are very enthusiastic and willing to help me.

Wang Jiawen: It sounds like your co-workers are very good to you!

Wang Mingwen: Yes, indeed! My colleagues help solve things together if I do not get what is being said or what is written.

Wang Jiawen: How many co-workers do you have in your department?

Wang Mingwen: We have 20-plus colleagues, all of whom are very young. Although they differ in personality, some are lively and some are kind; nevertheless, they are all easy to get along with.

Wang Jiawen: So, you are quite satisfied with your current job, right?

Wang Mingwen: Since the work environment here is very good, my colleagues are very earnest and help each other out, I am really happy with this job.

Wang Jiawen: I feel your decision to go the U.S. for work was the right one.

Wang Mingwen: I have gained a lot of experience since coming here, which I believe will be of benefit to my future.

Wang Jiawen: Dad and Mom want me to tell you that you must take good care of yourself.

Wang Mingwen: Tell them to rest assured that I will take care of myself.

Lesson 7 I Am Going to Europe on Business

Wang Mingwen: Joann, I have not seen you for quite a while. What have you been busy doing recently?

Joann Zhang: I went to Europe on a business trip, and visited relatives along the way.

Wang Mingwen: To what countries did you go?

Joann Zhang: I first went to Germany. My company sent me to go there and discuss cooperation with a trading company.

Wang Mingwen: How did your talks go?

Joann Zhang: They went smoothly. Our two companies have finished negotiating and have decided how we will cooperate afterward.

Wang Mingwen: I hope your company develops better and better.

Joann Zhang: The boss of our company hopes to be able to invest in Germany later on and open a branch company.

Wang Mingwen: Can you speak German?

Joann Zhang: No, I only understand a few phrases. I used English to communicate with them.

Wang Mingwen: After your work was done, where did you go to see your relatives?

Joann Zhang: I went to France to find my [maternal] aunt. I had not seen her or my [younger maternal] cousin for over two years.

Wang Mingwen: Is the place where you aunt lives far away from Germany?

Joann Zhang: No, not far. I took a train from Germany to my [maternal] aunt's home. It only took a bit more than two hours.

Wang Mingwen: I hear that traffic in Europe's large cities is very convenient. It is very easy to go out and take the subway or a bus.

Joann Zhang: Yes! [And] you can take the train from one country to another.

Wang Mingwen: I am quite interested in European culture. If later on I have the chance to travel to Europe, I will certainly first ask you for advice.

Joann Zhang: No problem, I will tell you all about some fun places.

Lesson 8 I Made a Mistake

Dushyant: Joann, what is going on? You do not look like you are in a very good mood.

Joann Zhang: Yesterday at the company I was reprimanded by the manager.

Dushyant: What happened?

Joann Zhang: Ugh! I did not read some information very clearly yesterday, [so] I miswrote the price on a contract.

Dushyant: Was it a serious problem?

Joann Zhang: Not too bad. When I gave it to the manager to look over, he discovered that I had written down an extra zero.

Dushyant: Wow! I suppose he was angry, right?

Joann Zhang: He was very angry, so he gave me a tongue-lashing.

Dushyant: I know how you feel. Botching something certainly makes you uncomfortable.

Joann Zhang: Yes, you have that right! Really sad. This problem would not have happened if I had been a bit more careful.

Dushyant: Don't be sad. I have also had this kind of experience.

Joann Zhang: What did you bungle?

Dushyant: One time my boss asked me to translate some information. When I had to give it to him, I discovered that the file I had saved on my computer was gone. I did not have enough time to do it over, so was given quite a lecture by the boss.

Joann Zhang: Nowadays, everyone uses computers to work. Although that is very convenient, it is also easy to have problems occur.

Dushyant: Now before I give the boss information, I definitely check it over several times; otherwise, I might not have a job.

Joann Zhang: Right, every bit of information must be looked over clearly and checked carefully.

Lesson 9 Weekend Activities

Gloria: I'm back. José, where are you?

José: I'm in the study upstairs.

Gloria: Please come down, I have something to discuss with you.

José: I am sorting data, come up here.

(Gloria went upstairs)

Gloria: My [older] sister say she has to go to New York next week on a business trip, and that there is no one to help take care of the kids. She wants to ask us to take care of them for a while.

José: The kids are coming to our place for the weekend?

Gloria: Yes. Would their coming here make you feel vexed?

José: No, it wouldn't, but every weekend we have to tidy up the place, so let's have them pitch in and help.

Gloria: No problem. Frank usually like to help his father cut the grass. With Nicole helping, I could take down those pictures and photographs and give them a good dusting.

José: After we finishing tidying up the place, how about grilling meat in the yard?

Gloria: The kids will certainly like grilling meat. They can help bring out the grilling stuff.

José: Spending the entire weekend at home is a bit boring. On Sunday, we could take them outside to play!

Gloria: Great! That morning we can go to a hill nearby and enjoy ourselves. We can take a look at the scenery from atop the hill and then leisurely stroll down. That will likely take a bit over two hours.

José: Next weekend it seems the community has a baseball game. After we get down the hill, we will take them to watch the game.

Gloria: Frank really likes to play baseball.

José: I think that our making these kinds of arrangements will make them really happy.

Lesson 10 My Mandarin Is Improving

Teacher Lin: Class, this term will soon be over. I am giving back the final exam booklets to everyone. Please look them over carefully.

Gloria: Wow! I'm really anxious, I wonder how I did on the test?

Dushaynt: Relax, you are the most hard-working student.

Gloria: When this term began, I recall often miswriting characters. This time I only wrote two wrong characters, and my listening comprehension and character writing capability both made progress, I'm really happy!

Dushaynt: I think Chinese characters are too hard to write; speaking is relatively easy. Now I speak more fluently than before, and can say longer sentences.

Joann Zhang: Recently I have often taken business trips and haven't had much time to do homework, so I didn't do very well on the test. However, the number of characters I can read has increased, and my tones are more accurate than before.

Teacher Lin: You all have been studious in class, so your test grades were pretty good. As long as you keep on studying, your Mandarin will certainly get better and better.

Dushaynt: I really like studying Mandarin. Learning Mandarin is not only interesting, it is very useful. I will really work hard at learning it.

Gloria: I agree with Dushaynt. My supervisor told me that because I can speak Mandarin, the company may send me to Taiwan to work there.

Joann Zhang: If you go to Taiwan, you can both work and learn Mandarin at the same time. Your Mandarin will certainly improve quite rapidly.

Teacher Lin: That's true. Taiwan is a most appropriate place to learn Mandarin. It has good teachers and schools.

Dushaynt: I hear that Taiwan not only has many fun places [to visit], but also has many unique snacks. Moreover, people in Taiwan are very friendly to foreigners.

Gloria: It sounds pretty neat. I hope I have the opportunity to go to Taiwan and see it for myself.

第一课 欢迎新同学

(学期的第一天)

林老师：大家好，今天是这个学期的第一天。

高莉亚：林老师，好久不见。

林老师：你们夏天的时候做了什么？

高莉亚：我跟先生去墨西哥度假了，玩得非常高兴。

杜翔：我们公司夏天的时候最忙，我差不多每个星期都加班。

高莉亚：你好辛苦啊！

(有人敲门)

张家安：请问，这是102教室吗？

林老师：是，请进。你有什么事？

张家安：我来上中文课。请问您是林老师吗？

林老师：我就是林老师。欢迎欢迎。妳以前学过中文吗？

张家安：我以前学了两年多。上个月我换工作，从东部搬到这里。我想继续学中文。

林老师：请妳介绍一下自己吧？

张家安：大家好，我姓张，名字叫家安。家人的「家」，平安的「安」。我在贸易公司工作。我的兴趣是照相，收集了很多鸟和猫的照片。

高莉亚：张家安，很高兴认识妳。我叫高莉亚，在卖手机的公司工作。

林老师：非常欢迎新同学。现在我们开始上课吧。

第二课 海边的风景很漂亮

丽莎：听说妳又去度假了。妳的假期怎么样？

高莉亚：这次度假又好玩又轻松。

丽莎：你们在那里做了什么？

高莉亚：我们天天去游泳，有一天还坐船去学潜水，看到了海里各种颜色的鱼。

丽莎：听起来很有意思。潜水很难吗？

高莉亚：不容易，但是教练教得很好，我很快就会了。

丽莎：上个周末是假期，海边的人很多吧？

高莉亚：海边到处都是人。我们这里冬天的时候，大家都想去海边晒太阳。

丽莎：你们住的旅馆怎么样？

高莉亚：我们住的旅馆离海边很近，在旅馆就可以看到海边，风景很漂亮。

丽莎：我想晚上也很美。

高莉亚：是啊！我们在海边，一边散步，一边看天上的星星，心情很轻松。

丽莎：你们是怎么去的？

高莉亚：我们是搭飞机去的，到了那里再租车去旅馆，很方便。

丽莎：我决定下个假期也去那里度假。

第三课 感恩节

丽莎：嗨！高莉亚，在想什么？

高莉亚：丽莎，我在想怎么过感恩节。

丽莎：从现在到感恩节，只有十天，妳赶快决定吧！

高莉亚：我想请不能回家的外国朋友来我家，大家一起过节比较热闹。

丽莎：太好了！我可以参加吗？最近工作很忙，没时间回家过节。

高莉亚：非常欢迎！我要做很多菜，怕时间来不及。妳可以早一点来帮忙吗？



丽 莎：没问题。妳可以请每个朋友带一点吃的东西，这样轻松一点。

高莉亚：妳的建议很好。我准备烤火鸡，做马铃薯泥跟沙拉。请朋友带面包、甜点、饮料和水果。

丽 莎：我带南瓜派，秋天的南瓜非常好吃。

高莉亚：听说杜翔很会做面包，我请他带面包。

丽 莎：再问问张家安，她好像也不打算回去。

高莉亚：如果她要来，请她带饮料或是水果。

丽 莎：今年的感恩节一定很有意思！

高莉亚：跟朋友一起过节，我也觉得很开心。

第四课 公司派我到这里工作

王明文：喂！请问妳是高莉亚吗？

高莉亚：我就是。你是哪位？

王明文：我是王明文，妳还记得我吗？

高莉亚：哇！王明文，当然记得。你是来美国旅行的吗？

王明文：不是，我们公司派我来美国的公司工作。

高莉亚：你现在在什么公司工作？

王明文：我在一家科技公司工作，因为我对美国的情形比较了解，所以公司派我来这里。

高莉亚：太好了！你要来这里多久？

王明文：公司希望我至少来这里一年。

高莉亚：我知道台湾在电脑科技方面发展得相当好，很多公司很有名。

王明文：是啊！我们公司跟很多国家的公司合作，产品也卖到世界各国。

高莉亚：你一毕业就回台湾，我以为你会一直在台湾工作。

王明文：虽然在台湾很好，可是在美国的工作经验对我的未来有帮助。

高莉亚：你刚来，工作忙不忙？

王明文：第一个月很忙，这个月轻松一点了。

高莉亚：那么，你有空的时候，我们再约时间见面吧。

第五课 乌龙茶很香

（王明文约高莉亚见面）

王明文：高莉亚，妳最近忙吗？想约妳见面聊聊天。

高莉亚：最近没有以前那么忙了。后天是周末，我跟何希都没事。

王明文：很高兴你们可以一起来，就来我家喝茶吧！

（王明文家，有人敲门）

王明文：高莉亚，何希，欢迎欢迎，请进。

高莉亚：明文，你在喝什么茶？闻起来很香。

王明文：我喝的是乌龙茶。妳要不要喝喝看？

高莉亚：好啊！我还没喝过台湾茶，麻烦你给我一杯。

王明文：不麻烦！茶就是要跟朋友一起喝的。我这里有乌龙茶跟红茶，妳想喝哪一种？

高莉亚：这两种茶的味道，有什么不同？

王明文：红茶喝起来味道比较浓，乌龙茶闻起来比较香，可是味道比红茶淡一点。

高莉亚：我跟何希都喜欢比较香的茶，我们选乌龙茶。

王明文：好。泡茶需要两分多钟，请等一下。

高莉亚：华人喝茶好像什么东西都不加，是吗？

王明文：是。妳了解华人喝茶的习惯，我就不用说明了。

高莉亚：这些茶的名字真有趣！你是在哪里买的？

王明文：这些茶不是在这里买的，是我从台湾带来的。台湾茶的品质非常好，妳喝喝看就知道了。味道怎么样？

高莉亚：嗯……，喝起来有一点苦，有一点甜，很特别。

王明文：这次妳喝的是味道比较淡，可是比较香的茶，要是有机会，我请妳喝味道浓一点的东方美人茶。

第六课 同事对我很好

王明文：喂，家文，是我。爸妈都好吗？

王家文：我们一切都好。你呢？工作怎么样？

王明文：我刚来的时候很忙，工作常常没做完。不过，现在已经适应了。

王家文：哇！你的压力一定很大。

王明文：还好同事们都很热心，愿意帮我忙。

王家文：听起来你的同事对你很好啊！

王明文：是啊！如果我有听不懂或看不懂的资料，也都是同事帮忙一起解决的。

王家文：你的部门有多少同事？

王明文：有二十几位同事，大家都很年轻。虽然个性不同，有的人活泼，有的人亲切，但是都很好相处。

王家文：你对现在的工作很满意，是吧？

王明文：因为这里的工作环境很好，同事们都很认真，也会互相帮忙，所以在这里工作很开心。

王家文：我觉得你决定到美国工作是对的。

王明文：我来这里以后，得到很多经验，相信对我的未来一定有好处。

王家文：爸妈要我告诉你，好好地照顾自己。

王明文：请爸妈放心，我会照顾自己的。

第七课 我去欧洲出差

王明文：家安，好久没看到妳，妳最近在忙什么呢？

张家安：我去欧洲出差，顺便去看看亲戚。

王明文：妳去了哪些国家？

张家安：我先去了德国，公司派我去跟一家贸易公司谈合作的事。

王明文：你们谈得怎么样？

张家安：谈得很顺利。我们两家公司已经谈好了，也决定以后怎么合作了。

王明文：希望你们公司发展得越来越好。

张家安：我们公司的老板希望以后能在德国投资，开分公司。

王明文：妳会不会说德文？

张家安：不会，我只听得懂几句话。我是用英文跟他们沟通的。

王明文：工作做完了以后，妳去哪里看亲戚？

张家安：我去法国找我阿姨，有两年多没看到她和表妹了。

王明文：妳阿姨住的地方离德国远吗？

张家安：不远。我从德国搭火车到阿姨家，才两个多小时。



王明文：听说欧洲大城市的交通很方便，出门坐地铁或是坐公车都很容易。

张家安：是啊！搭火车就可以从一个国家到其他国家。

王明文：我对欧洲的文化有兴趣，要是以后有机会去欧洲旅行，一定先请教妳。

张家安：没问题，我会好好地给你介绍一些好玩的地方。

第八课 我做错了事

杜翔：家安，妳怎么了？看起来心情不太好。

张家安：我昨天在公司被经理骂了。

杜翔：发生了什么事？

张家安：唉！我昨天没看清楚资料，写错了合约上面的价钱。

杜翔：问题很严重吗？

张家安：还好我给经理看的时候，他发现在我多写了一个零。

杜翔：哇！他生气了吧？

张家安：他很生气，所以骂了我一顿。

杜翔：我了解妳的感觉，做错事一定让妳很不舒服。

张家安：是啊！相当难过，如果我小心一点就不会发生这种问题了。

杜翔：别难过了。我也有这样的经验。

张家安：你做错了什么事？

杜翔：有一次，老板让我翻译一份资料，我要交给他的时候，发现存在电脑里面的档案不见了。我来不及再做一份，就被老板骂了一顿。

张家安：现在大家都用电脑工作，虽然很方便，可是也很容易发生问题。

杜翔：我现在给老板资料以前，一定多检查几次，要不然工作可能就没了。

张家安：对，每份资料都要看得很清楚，也要认真地检查。

第九课 周末的活动

高莉亚：我回来了。何希，你在哪里？

何希：我在楼上书房。

高莉亚：请你下来，我有事跟你说。

何希：我在整理资料，妳上来吧。

（高莉亚走到楼上）

高莉亚：我姊姊说她下个星期要去纽约出差，没有人帮她照顾孩子，想请我们照顾一下。

何希：孩子们是周末来我们家吧？

高莉亚：是。他们来这里会不会让你觉得麻烦？

何希：不会。但是我们每个周末都要打扫房子，就让他们一起帮忙吧。

高莉亚：没问题，Frank 平常就喜欢帮他爸爸割草。有 Nicole 帮忙，那些画跟照片，我就可以拿下来好好地擦一擦。

何希：我们打扫完了，在院子烤肉，好不好？

高莉亚：孩子们一定喜欢烤肉，他们可以帮忙把烤肉的东西拿出去。

何希：周末都在家有一点无聊，我们星期天带他们出去玩玩吧！

高莉亚：好啊！上午去附近的小山玩玩。我们爬上去，在山上看看风景再慢慢地走下来，大概要两个多小时。

何 希：下个周末社区好像有棒球比赛，下山以后，我们就带他们去看比赛。

高莉亚：好，Frank 非常喜欢打棒球。

何 希：我想我们这样安排，会让他们很开心。

第十课 我的华语进步了

林老师：各位同学，这个学期快要结束了。我把最后一次考试的考卷还给大家，请你们仔细地看看。

高莉亚：哇！好紧张，不知道我考得怎么样。

杜 翔：妳是最用功的学生，放心吧。

高莉亚：这学期开始的时候，我记得自己常常写错字。这次我只写错了两个字，听力跟写字的能力都进步了，真开心！

杜 翔：我觉得汉字太难写了，说话比较容易。现在我说得比以前流利，也能说更长的句子。

张家安：我最近常常出差，没有太多的时间写作业，所以考得不太好。但是我认识的字比以前多了，声调也比以前正确了。

林老师：你们上课都很认真，考试的成绩也不错，只要继续学习，你们的中文一定越来越好。

杜 翔：我很喜欢学中文，学中文不但有趣，而且很有用，我会努力地学习。

高莉亚：我同意杜翔的想法。我的主管告诉我，因为我会说中文，所以公司可能把我派到台湾去工作。

张家安：如果妳去台湾，可以一边工作，一边学中文，妳的中文一定会进步得很快。

林老师：没错，台湾是一个很适合学中文的地方，有很好的老师和学校。

杜 翔：我听说台湾不但有很多好玩的地方，也有很多特别的小吃，而且台湾人对外国人很友善。

高莉亚：听起来真不错，我希望能有机会去台湾看看。

Pinyin	Traditional Characters	Simplified Characters	English	Lesson Number
A				
a	啊	啊	[exclamatory particle]	1-9
āi	唉	唉	Ugh, alas	8-7
ānpái	安排	安排	arrange	9-23
āyí	阿姨	阿姨	aunt	7-12
B				
bǎ	把	把	[definite object marker]	9-13
bāngmáng	幫忙	帮忙	help, assist	3-14
bàngqiú	棒球	棒球	baseball	9-20
bāngzhù	幫助	帮助	help, assist	4-24
bèi	被	被	[passive verb tense marker]	8-3
běn	本	本	[measure word for] books	6-33
biǎomèi	表妹	表妹	[younger female] cousin	7-13
bié	別	别	do not V	8-21
bǐsài	比賽	比赛	competition, contest, game	9-21
búdàn	不但	不但	not only...	10-21
búguò	不過	不过	however	6-3
bújiànle	不見了	不见了	disappear, be missing, be gone	8-32
bùmén	部門	部门	department	6-12
bùtóng	不同	不同	different	5-7
bùyòng	不用	不用	no need to...	5-14
C				
cā	擦	擦	wipe	9-10
cái	才	才	merely, only	7-15

Pinyin	Traditional Characters	Simplified Characters	English	Lesson Number
cài	菜	菜	food, dish (prepared item of food)	3-9
cānjiā	參加	参加	participate, take part in	3-8
chǎnpǐn	產品	产品	product	4-18
chéngjī	成績	成绩	grades, report card	10-19
chuán	船	船	boat	2-6
chūchāi	出差	出差	take a business trip	7-1
chūqù	出去	出去	go out	9-14
cì	次	次	time(s)	2-3
cún	存	存	save	8-25
cuò	錯	错	mistake, error	8-1

D

dǎ	打	打	hit, strike, beat	8-33
dā	搭	搭	take; ride	2-21
dàgài	大概	大概	perhaps, approximately, generally, roughly	9-19
dàjiā	大家	大家	everyone	1-2
dàn	淡	淡	light, bland, diluted	5-9
dǎng'àn	檔案	档案	document	8-26
dāngrán	當然	当然	of course	4-5
dàochù	到處	到处	everywhere	2-12
dǎsǎo	打掃	打扫	clean up	9-6
dédào	得到	得到	get, receive, obtain	6-22
Déguó	德國	德国	Germany	7-27
Déwén	德文	德文	the German language	7-28
dì	第	第	[Ordinal prefix]	1-4
dìtiě	地鐵	地铁	subway, underground	7-17

Pinyin	Traditional Characters	Simplified Characters	English	Lesson Number
dǒng	懂	懂	understand	6-9
dōngbù	東部	东部	east (part of a territory)	1-15
dōngfāng měirénchá	東方美人茶	东方美人茶	dongfang meiren tea, white-tip oolong tea, champagne oolong tea	5-23
duì	對	对	to	4-8
dùjià	度假	度假	vacation	1-5
dùn	頓	顿	verbal measure word for a duration of action, mostly used with 罵 mà (reprimand) or 打 dǎ (beat, hit).	8-16

E

en	嗯	嗯	Uh...	5-18
érqiě	而且	而且	but also...	10-22

F

fàng	放	放	place [somewhere], let go of	10-32
fāngmiàn	方面	方面	aspect	4-13
fàngxīn	放心	放心	rest assured, be at ease [about something]	6-27
fānyì	翻譯	翻译	translate	8-22
fāshēng	發生	发生	occur, happen	8-6
fāxiàn	發現	发现	discover	8-13
fāzhǎn	發展	发展	develop	4-14
fēijī	飛機	飞机	airplane	2-22
fèn	份	份	measure word for documents, reports, etc.	8-23
fēngjǐng	風景	风景	scenery	2-2
fēngōngsī	分公司	分公司	branch company	4-6

G

Gǎn'ēn jié	感恩節	感恩节	Thanksgiving (U.S. holiday)	3-1
------------	-----	-----	-----------------------------	-----

Pinyin	Traditional Characters	Simplified Characters	English	Lesson Number
gāng	剛	刚	just	4-25
gǎnjué	感覺	感觉	feeling	8-17
gǎnkuài	趕快	赶快	hurry up and [V], [V] immediately	3-4
gàosù	告訴	告诉	tell, inform	6-25
gè	各	各	each; every	2-8
gēcǎo	割草	割草	mow the lawn	9-7
gèng	更	更	[even] more [Adj], [Adj]er	10-14
gèxìng	個性	个性	personality	6-14
gōngchē	公車	公车	bus, coach	7-18
gōutōng	溝通	沟通	communicate	7-11
guò	過	过	spend, celebrate [a holiday]	3-3
guò jié	過節	过节	spend/celebrate a holiday	3-29

H

hài	嗨	嗨	Hi!	3-2
hái	還	还	still	4-2
hǎi biān	海邊	海边	seashore, beach	2-1
hǎi lǐ	海裡	海里	in the sea	2-26
háihǎo	還好	还好	fortunately	6-6
hànzì	漢字	汉字	Chinese characters	10-12
hǎo	好	好	really, quite	1-7
hǎochù	好處	好处	advantage, benefit, good point	6-24
hǎohǎo de	好好地	好好地	properly, thoroughly, really	6-32
hǎowán	好玩	好玩	fun	7-22
hǎoxiàng	好像	好像	it seems that...	3-24
hē chá	喝茶	喝茶	drink tea	5-24
héyuē	合約	合约	contract, agreement	8-9

Pinyin	Traditional Characters	Simplified Characters	English	Lesson Number
hézuò	合作	合作	cooperate	4-17
hòutiān	後天	后天	the day after tomorrow	5-3
huà	畫	画	painting	9-8
huán	還	还	return, give back	10-6
huàn	換	换	change, switch	1-14
huánjìng	環境	环境	environment	6-19
Huárén	華人	华人	Chinese people as an ethnic group	5-12
huí jiā	回家	回家	go home	3-28
huǒchē	火車	火车	train	7-14
huódòng	活動	活动	activity	9-1
huǒjī	火雞	火鸡	turkey	3-18
huópō	活潑	活泼	lively, vivacious	6-15
huòshì	或是	或是	or...	3-25
hùxiāng	互相	互相	mutually, each other	6-21

J

jiābān	加班	加班	work overtime	1-6
jiǎnchá	檢查	检查	examine, check, inspect	8-27
jiànmiàn	見面	见面	meet up [with someone]	4-27
jiànyì	建議	建议	suggestion	3-16
jiāo	交	交	hand in, turn in	8-24
jiàoliàn	教練	教练	coach; instructor	2-11
jiàoshì	教室	教室	classroom	1-10
jiāotōng	交通	交通	transportation, traffic	7-16
jiàqián	價錢	价钱	price	8-10
jìde	記得	记得	remember	4-3
jiějué	解決	解决	solve	6-11

Pinyin	Traditional Characters	Simplified Characters	English	Lesson Number
jiéshù	結束	结束	conclude, come to an end	10-2
jìnbù	進步	进步	to make progress, to improve	10-1
jīnglǐ	經理	经理	manager	8-4
jīngyàn	經驗	经验	experience	4-22
jǐnzhāng	緊張	紧张	tense, nervous	10-8
jiù	就	就	indeed, in fact	1-12
jìxù	繼續	继续	continue	1-16
jù	句	句	Measure word for phrase, sentence, or utterance	7-9
juéding	決定	决定	decide	2-24
jùzi	句子	句子	sentence	10-15

K

kāi	開	开	open	7-8
kāixīn	開心	开心	happy	3-26
kàn bù dǒng	看不懂	看不懂	cannot understand [what is read]	6-30
kàn qīngchǔ	看清楚	看清楚	see clearly, discern	8-30
kàndào	看到	看到	see, gaze at	2-28
kǎo	烤	烤	bake, roast	3-17
kǎo huǒjī	烤火雞	烤火鸡	roast turkey	3-31
kǎojiàn	考卷	考卷	test paper, test booklet	10-5
kǎoròu	烤肉	烤肉	grill meat	9-12
kǎoshì	考試	考试	take a test, give a test/test	10-4
kējì	科技	科技	technology	4-7
kěyǐ	可以	可以	may, might	3-7
kǔ	苦	苦	bitter	5-19

Pinyin	Traditional Characters	Simplified Characters	English	Lesson Number
L				
láibùjí	來不及	来不及	cannot do [something] in time	3-11
lǎobǎn	老闆	老板	boss, proprietor	7-6
lèsè	垃圾	垃圾	trash, garbage	9-29
liǎojiě	了解	了解	understand	4-10
Lín	林	林	an example of a surname	1-26
líng	零	零	the number zero	8-14
liúli	流利	流利	fluent	10-13
lǚguǎn	旅館	旅馆	hotel	2-14

M				
mà	罵	骂	scold, criticize, reprimand, admonish	8-5
máfan	麻煩	麻烦	put someone to the trouble of...	5-5
mǎlíngshǔní	馬鈴薯泥	马铃薯泥	mashed potatoes	3-19
màn	慢	慢	slow	6-34
mǎnyì	滿意	满意	satisfy	6-18
māo	貓	猫	cat	1-22
màoyì	貿易	贸易	trade (nation to nation)	1-18
měi	美	美	beautiful	2-15
méi kàndào	沒看到	没看到	did not see	7-23
méi zuòwán	沒做完	没做完	not [yet] finished, not completed	6-28
méicuò	沒錯	没错	That's true, you have that right	10-30
miànbāo	麵包	面包	bread, rolls	3-21
Mòxīgē	墨西哥	墨西哥	Mexico	1-27

N				
ná	拿	拿	take	9-9
ná chūqù	拿出去	拿出去	take outside	9-25

Pinyin	Traditional Characters	Simplified Characters	English	Lesson Number
ná xiàlái	拿下來	拿下来	bring down [from above]	9-24
nánguā pài	南瓜派	南瓜派	pumpkin pie	3-23
nánguò	難過	难过	sad	8-19
nénglì	能力	能力	ability, capability	10-11
niánqīng	年輕	年轻	young	6-13
niǎo	鳥	鸟	bird	1-21
Niūyuē	紐約	纽约	New York	9-28
nóng	濃	浓	thick, rich, concentrated	5-8
nǔlì	努力	努力	work hard at [doing something]	10-23

O

Ōuzhōu	歐洲	欧洲	Europe	7-26
--------	----	----	--------	------

P

pá	爬	爬	climb	9-17
pà	怕	怕	be afraid that..., fear that...	3-10
pá shàngqù	爬上去	爬上去	climb up	9-26
pài	派	派	send, post	4-1
pào	泡	泡	steep, soak	5-11
píng'ān	平安	平安	safe, at peace	1-17
pǐnzhì	品質	品质	quality	5-17

Q

qiánshuǐ	潛水	潜水	to dive	2-7
qiāo mén	敲門	敲门	knock on a door	1-24
qīngchǔ	清楚	清楚	clear	8-8
qǐngjiào	請教	请教	consult [someone], ask for advice	7-21
qīngsōng	輕鬆	轻松	relaxing	2-4
qíngxíng	情形	情形	situation	4-9

Pinyin	Traditional Characters	Simplified Characters	English	Lesson Number
qīnqī	親戚	亲戚	relatives	7-3
qīnqiè	親切	亲切	kind, nice	6-16
qítā	其他	其他	other	7-19

R

ràng	讓	让	cause/make/let	8-18
rènao	熱鬧	热闹	[an event or scene] is lively, boisterous	3-6
rènzhen	認真	认真	earnest, ardent	6-20
rèxīn	熱心	热心	enthusiastic	6-7
róngyì	容易	容易	easy	2-10

S

shài	晒	晒	sunbathe	2-13
shālā	沙拉	沙拉	salad	3-20
shān	山	山	mountain, hill	9-16
shànglái	上來	上来	come up	9-5
shàngqù	上去	上去	go up	9-18
shēngdiào	聲調	声调	tone	10-17
shēngqì	生氣	生气	mad, angry	8-15
shì	事	事	something (meaning an event or matter)	1-11
shìhé	適合	适合	be appropriate	10-27
shìjiè	世界	世界	world	4-19
shìyìng	適應	适应	adapt, acclimate to [a situation]	6-4
shōují	收集	收集	collect	1-20
shūfáng	書房	书房	study	9-2
shùnbìan	順便	顺便	casually	7-2
shùnlì	順利	顺利	smoothly	7-5

Pinyin	Traditional Characters	Simplified Characters	English	Lesson Number
shuōmíng	說明	说明	explain	5-15

T

tán	談	谈	discuss	7-4
tánhǎo le	談好了	谈好了	finished discussing	7-24
tèbié	特別	特别	particular	5-21
tián	甜	甜	sweet	5-20
tiándiǎn	甜點	甜点	dessert	3-22
tiānshàng	天上	天上	in the sky	2-17
tīng bù dǒng	聽不懂	听不懂	cannot understand [what is said]	6-29
tīng qǐlái	聽起來	听起来	sounds	2-27
tīnglì	聽力	听力	listening comprehension	10-10
tóngxué	同學	同学	classmate	1-1
tóngyì	同意	同意	agree	10-24
tóuzī	投資	投资	invest	7-7

W

wa	哇	哇	Wow!	4-4
wàiguó	外國	外国	foreign country	3-5
wàiguó rén	外國人	外国人	foreigner	10-31
wán	完	完	complete, finish [an action]	6-2
wǎn	晚	晚	late	3-27
wèidào	味道	味道	flavor, taste	5-6
wèilái	未來	未来	future	4-23
wén	聞	闻	smell, sniff	5-4
wénhuà	文化	文化	culture	7-20
wèntí	問題	问题	problem	8-11
wúliáo	無聊	无聊	boring, tedious	9-15

Pinyin	Traditional Characters	Simplified Characters	English	Lesson Number
--------	------------------------	-----------------------	---------	---------------

wūlóngchá	烏龍茶	乌龙茶	oolong tea	5-1
-----------	-----	-----	------------	-----

X

xià shān	下山	下山	descend a mountain, hill	9-22
xiàlái	下來	下来	come down	9-3
xiāng	香	香	aromatic, fragrant	5-2
xiāngchǔ	相處	相处	get along [with someone]	6-17
xiāngdāng	相當	相当	considerably	4-15
xiǎngfǎ	想法	想法	way of thinking, thoughts	10-25
xiāngxìn	相信	相信	believe, have faith in, accept as true	6-23
xiǎochī	小吃	小吃	snacks	10-28
xiǎoxīn	小心	小心	careful	8-20
xíguàn	習慣	习惯	custom, habit, mores	5-13
xìngqù	興趣	兴趣	interest (hobby)	1-19
xīngxīng	星星	星星	stars	2-18
xīnkǔ	辛苦	辛苦	do something arduous	1-8
xīnqíng	心情	心情	mood, frame of mind	2-19
xīnqíng	心情	心情	mood, frame of mind	8-2
xuǎn	選	选	choose, select	5-10
xuéqí	學期	学期	academic term	1-3
xuéxí	學習	学习	learn	10-20

Y

yāli	壓力	压力	pressure	6-5
yánzhòng	嚴重	严重	severe	8-12
yàobùrán	要不然	要不然	otherwise	8-28
yàoshì	要是	要是	if...	5-22
yìbiān	一邊	一边	on the one hand...; on the other hand...	2-16

Pinyin	Traditional Characters	Simplified Characters	English	Lesson Number
yídiǎn	一點	一点	a bit, a small amount	3-13
yǐqián	以前	以前	before, previously	1-13
yíqiè	一切	一切	everything, all	6-1
yǐwéi	以為	以为	suppose, presume	4-20
yìzhí	一直	一直	consistently, all the way through	4-21
yǐzi	椅子	椅子	chair	9-31
yòng	用	用	use	7-10
yònggōng	用功	用功	studious, hard-working	10-9
yǒude	有的	有的	some [N]	6-31
yǒumíng	有名	有名	famous, prominent	4-16
yǒuqù	有趣	有趣	interesting	5-16
yǒushàn	友善	友善	kind, friendly, courteous	10-29
yǒuyíci	有一次	有一次	there was one time [when]...	8-31
yǒuyìtiān	有一天	有一天	one day	2-25
yuànyì	願意	愿意	willing [to do something]	6-8
yuànzi	院子	院子	courtyard, yard	9-11
yuē	約	约	make an appointment, agree a date	4-26
yuèláiyuè	越來越	越来越	more and more...	7-25

Z

zǎo	早	早	early	3-12
zǎo yídiǎn	早一點	早一点	a bit early	3-30
zěnmé	怎麼	怎么	how	2-20
Zhāng Jiā'ān	張家安	张家安	Joann Zhang	1-28
zhào xiàng	照相	照相	photography	1-25
zhàogù	照顧	照顾	take care of, look after [someone]	6-26
zhàopiàn	照片	照片	photograph	1-23

Pinyin	Traditional Characters	Simplified Characters	English	Lesson Number
zhěnglǐ	整理	整理	tidy up, arrange	9-4
zhèngquè	正確	正确	accurate	10-18
zhèyàng	這樣	这样	In this way	3-15
zhīdào	知道	知道	know	4-12
zhìshǎo	至少	至少	at least	4-11
zhǒng	種	种	kind	2-9
zhǔguǎn	主管	主管	supervisor	10-26
zhuōzi	桌子	桌子	table	9-30
zīliào	資料	资料	data, material	6-10
zǐxì	仔細	仔细	careful, meticulous	10-7
zǒu xiàlái	走下來	走下来	go down	9-27
zū	租	租	rent	2-23
zuìhòu	最後	最后	final	10-3
zuò	坐	坐	take; ride	2-5
zuòcuò le	做錯了	做错了	made a mistake, did something wrong, botched/bungled something	8-29
zuòyè	作業	作业	homework	10-16

注音符號符號表 Mandarin Phonetic Symbols

Chart of Initials

	Unaspirated	Aspirated	Nasal	Fricative	Voiced
1. Labial	ㄅ	ㄆ	ㄇ	ㄈ	
2. Alveolar	ㄉ	ㄊ	ㄋ		ㄌ
3. Velar	ㄍ	ㄎ		ㄗ	
4. Palatal	ㄑ	ㄒ		ㄔ	
5. Retroflex	ㄗ	ㄘ		ㄙ	ㄣ
6. Dental sibilant	ㄗ	ㄘ		ㄣ	

Simple finals / Compound finals / Nasal finals

Simple finals	ㄚ	ㄛ	ㄜ	ㄝ								
Compound finals					ㄝ	ㄞ	ㄟ	ㄠ	ㄡ			ㄢ
Nasal finals									ㄣ	ㄤ	ㄥ	ㄨ
Medials / Simple final	ㄟ	ㄠ	ㄡ									
Compound finals	ㄟ	ㄠ		ㄟ	ㄠ		ㄟ	ㄠ	ㄟ	ㄠ	ㄟ	ㄠ
	ㄚ	ㄛ		ㄟ	ㄠ		ㄟ	ㄠ	ㄟ	ㄠ	ㄟ	ㄠ
	ㄠ	ㄡ			ㄠ	ㄡ			ㄠ	ㄡ	ㄠ	ㄡ
	ㄚ	ㄛ		ㄠ	ㄡ				ㄠ	ㄡ	ㄠ	ㄡ
				ㄠ	ㄡ				ㄠ	ㄡ		ㄠ



漢語拼音符號表 Hanyu Pinyin

Chart of Initials

	Unaspirated	Aspirated	Nasal	Fricative	Voiced
1. Labial	b	p	m	f	
2. Alveolar	d	t	n		l
3. Velar	g	k		h	
4. Palatal	j	q		x	
5. Retroflex	zh	ch		sh	r
6. Dental sibilant	z	c		s	

Simple finals / Compound finals / Nasal finals

Simple finals	a	o	e	i	u	ü
Compound finals	ai	ei	ao	ou		
	-ia/ya	-iao/yao	-ie/ye	-iu(iou)/you		
	-ua/wa	-uo/wo	-uai/wai	-ui(uei)/wei		
	-üe/yue					
	er					
Nasal finals	an	en	ang	-eng	-ong	
	-ian/yan	-in/yin	-iang/yang	-ing/ying	-iong	
	-uan/wan	-un(uen)/wen	-uang/wang	-ueng/weng		
	-üan/yuan	-ün(üen)/yun				

注音符號・漢語拼音對照表

Mandarin Phonetic Symbols and Hanyu Pinyin Comparison Table

Finals Ini-	ㄅ b	ㄆ p	ㄇ m	ㄈ f	ㄉ d	ㄊ t	ㄋ n	ㄌ l	ㄍ g	ㄎ k	
ㄚ a	ㄅ ㄚ ba	ㄆ ㄚ pa	ㄇ ㄚ ma	ㄈ ㄚ fa	ㄉ ㄚ da	ㄊ ㄚ ta	ㄋ ㄚ na	ㄌ ㄚ la	ㄍ ㄚ ga	ㄎ ㄚ ka	
ㄛ o	ㄅ ㄛ bo	ㄆ ㄛ po	ㄇ ㄛ mo	ㄈ ㄛ fo							
ㄜ e			ㄇ ㄜ me		ㄉ ㄜ de	ㄊ ㄜ te	ㄋ ㄜ ne	ㄌ ㄜ le	ㄍ ㄜ ge	ㄎ ㄜ ke	
ㄝ ê											
ㄞ ai	ㄅ ㄞ bai	ㄆ ㄞ pai	ㄇ ㄞ mai		ㄉ ㄞ dai	ㄊ ㄞ tai	ㄋ ㄞ nai	ㄌ ㄞ lai	ㄍ ㄞ gai	ㄎ ㄞ kai	
ㄟ ei	ㄅ ㄟ bei	ㄆ ㄟ pei	ㄇ ㄟ mei	ㄈ ㄟ fei	ㄉ ㄟ dei		ㄋ ㄟ nei	ㄌ ㄟ lei	ㄍ ㄟ gei		
ㄠ ao	ㄅ ㄠ bao	ㄆ ㄠ pao	ㄇ ㄠ mao		ㄉ ㄠ dao	ㄊ ㄠ tao	ㄋ ㄠ nao	ㄌ ㄠ lao	ㄍ ㄠ gao	ㄎ ㄠ kao	
ㄡ ou		ㄆ ㄡ pou	ㄇ ㄡ mou	ㄈ ㄡ fou	ㄉ ㄡ dou	ㄊ ㄡ tou	ㄋ ㄡ nou	ㄌ ㄡ lou	ㄍ ㄡ gou	ㄎ ㄡ kou	
ㄢ an	ㄅ ㄢ ban	ㄆ ㄢ pan	ㄇ ㄢ man	ㄈ ㄢ fan	ㄉ ㄢ dan	ㄊ ㄢ tan	ㄋ ㄢ nan	ㄌ ㄢ lan	ㄍ ㄢ gan	ㄎ ㄢ kan	
ㄣ en	ㄅ ㄣ ben	ㄆ ㄣ pen	ㄇ ㄣ men	ㄈ ㄣ fen			ㄋ ㄣ nen		ㄍ ㄣ gen	ㄎ ㄣ ken	
ㄤ ang	ㄅ ㄤ bang	ㄆ ㄤ pang	ㄇ ㄤ mang	ㄈ ㄤ fang	ㄉ ㄤ dang	ㄊ ㄤ tang	ㄋ ㄤ nang	ㄌ ㄤ lang	ㄍ ㄤ gang	ㄎ ㄤ kang	
ㄥ eng	ㄅ ㄥ beng	ㄆ ㄥ peng	ㄇ ㄥ meng	ㄈ ㄥ feng	ㄉ ㄥ deng	ㄊ ㄥ teng	ㄋ ㄥ neng	ㄌ ㄥ leng	ㄍ ㄥ geng	ㄎ ㄥ keng	
ㄦ er											
ㄧ yi/-i	ㄅ ㄧ bi	ㄆ ㄧ pi	ㄇ ㄧ mi		ㄉ ㄧ di	ㄊ ㄧ ti	ㄋ ㄧ ni	ㄌ ㄧ li			
ㄧ ㄚ ya/-ia								ㄌ ㄧ ㄚ lia			
ㄧ ㄛ yo											
ㄧ ㄜ ye/-ie	ㄅ ㄧ ㄜ bie	ㄆ ㄧ ㄜ pie	ㄇ ㄧ ㄜ mie		ㄉ ㄧ ㄜ die	ㄊ ㄧ ㄜ tie	ㄋ ㄧ ㄜ nie	ㄌ ㄧ ㄜ lie			
ㄧ ㄞ yai											

	ㄏ h	ㄐ j	ㄑ q	ㄒ x	ㄓ zh	ㄔ ch	ㄕ sh	ㄖ r	ㄗ z	ㄘ c	ㄙ s
	ㄏ ㄩ ha				ㄓ ㄩ zha	ㄔ ㄩ cha	ㄕ ㄩ sha		ㄗ ㄩ za	ㄘ ㄩ ca	ㄙ ㄩ sa
	ㄏ ㄜ he				ㄓ ㄜ zhe	ㄔ ㄜ che	ㄕ ㄜ she	ㄖ ㄜ re	ㄗ ㄜ ze	ㄘ ㄜ ce	ㄙ ㄜ se
	ㄏ ㄞ hai				ㄓ ㄞ zhai	ㄔ ㄞ chai	ㄕ ㄞ shai		ㄗ ㄞ zai	ㄘ ㄞ cai	ㄙ ㄞ sai
	ㄏ ㄟ hei				ㄓ ㄟ zhei		ㄕ ㄟ shei		ㄗ ㄟ zei		
	ㄏ ㄠ hao				ㄓ ㄠ zhao	ㄔ ㄠ chao	ㄕ ㄠ shao	ㄖ ㄠ rao	ㄗ ㄠ zao	ㄘ ㄠ cao	ㄙ ㄠ sao
	ㄏ ㄡ hou				ㄓ ㄡ zhou	ㄔ ㄡ chou	ㄕ ㄡ shou	ㄖ ㄡ rou	ㄗ ㄡ zou	ㄘ ㄡ cou	ㄙ ㄡ sou
	ㄏ ㄢ han				ㄓ ㄢ zhan	ㄔ ㄢ chan	ㄕ ㄢ shan	ㄖ ㄢ ran	ㄗ ㄢ zan	ㄘ ㄢ can	ㄙ ㄢ san
	ㄏ ㄣ hen				ㄓ ㄣ zhen	ㄔ ㄣ chen	ㄕ ㄣ shen	ㄖ ㄣ ren	ㄗ ㄣ zen	ㄘ ㄣ cen	ㄙ ㄣ sen
	ㄏ ㄤ hang				ㄓ ㄤ zhang	ㄔ ㄤ chang	ㄕ ㄤ shang	ㄖ ㄤ rang	ㄗ ㄤ zang	ㄘ ㄤ cang	ㄙ ㄤ sang
	ㄏ ㄥ heng				ㄓ ㄥ zheng	ㄔ ㄥ cheng	ㄕ ㄥ sheng	ㄖ ㄥ reng	ㄗ ㄥ zeng	ㄘ ㄥ ceng	ㄙ ㄥ seng
		ㄐ ㄣ ji	ㄑ ㄣ qi	ㄒ ㄣ xi							
		ㄐ ㄣ ㄩ jia	ㄑ ㄣ ㄩ qia	ㄒ ㄣ ㄩ xia							
		ㄐ ㄣ ㄜ jie	ㄑ ㄣ ㄜ qie	ㄒ ㄣ ㄜ xie							

Ini- Finals	ㄅ b	ㄆ p	ㄇ m	ㄈ f	ㄉ d	ㄊ t	ㄋ n	ㄌ l	ㄍ g	ㄎ k	
ㄧㄠ yao/-iao	ㄅㄧㄠ biao	ㄆㄧㄠ piao	ㄇㄧㄠ miao		ㄉㄧㄠ diao	ㄊㄧㄠ tiao	ㄋㄧㄠ niao	ㄌㄧㄠ liao			
ㄧㄡ you/-iou			ㄇㄧㄡ miu		ㄉㄧㄡ diu		ㄋㄧㄡ niu	ㄌㄧㄡ liu			
ㄧㄢ yan/-ian	ㄅㄧㄢ bian	ㄆㄧㄢ pian	ㄇㄧㄢ mian		ㄉㄧㄢ dian	ㄊㄧㄢ tian	ㄋㄧㄢ nian	ㄌㄧㄢ lian			
ㄧㄣ yin/-in	ㄅㄧㄣ bin	ㄆㄧㄣ pin	ㄇㄧㄣ min				ㄋㄧㄣ nin	ㄌㄧㄣ lin			
ㄧㄤ yang/-iang							ㄋㄧㄤ niang	ㄌㄧㄤ liang			
ㄧㄥ ying/-ing	ㄅㄧㄥ bing	ㄆㄧㄥ ping	ㄇㄧㄥ ming		ㄉㄧㄥ ding	ㄊㄧㄥ ting	ㄋㄧㄥ ning	ㄌㄧㄥ ling			
ㄨ wu/-u	ㄅㄨ bu	ㄆㄨ pu	ㄇㄨ mu	ㄈㄨ fu	ㄉㄨ du	ㄊㄨ tu	ㄋㄨ nu	ㄌㄨ lu	ㄍㄨ gu	ㄎㄨ ku	
ㄨㄚ wa/-ua									ㄍㄨㄚ gua	ㄎㄨㄚ kua	
ㄨㄛ wo/-uo					ㄉㄨㄛ duo	ㄊㄨㄛ tuo	ㄋㄨㄛ nuo	ㄌㄨㄛ luo	ㄍㄨㄛ guo	ㄎㄨㄛ kuo	
ㄨㄞ wai/-uai									ㄍㄨㄞ guai	ㄎㄨㄞ kuai	
ㄨㄟ wei/-ui					ㄉㄨㄟ dui	ㄊㄨㄟ tui			ㄍㄨㄟ gui	ㄎㄨㄟ kui	
ㄨㄢ wan/-uan					ㄉㄨㄢ duan	ㄊㄨㄢ tuan	ㄋㄨㄢ nuan	ㄌㄨㄢ luan	ㄍㄨㄢ guan	ㄎㄨㄢ kuan	
ㄨㄣ wen/-un					ㄉㄨㄣ dun	ㄊㄨㄣ tun		ㄌㄨㄣ lun	ㄍㄨㄣ gun	ㄎㄨㄣ kun	
ㄨㄤ wang/- uang									ㄍㄨㄤ guang	ㄎㄨㄤ kuang	
ㄨㄥ weng/-ong					ㄉㄨㄥ dong	ㄊㄨㄥ tong	ㄋㄨㄥ nong	ㄌㄨㄥ long	ㄍㄨㄥ gong	ㄎㄨㄥ kong	
ㄩ yu/-ü							ㄋㄩ nǚ	ㄌㄩ lǚ			
ㄩㄝ yue/-üe							ㄋㄩㄝ nǚe	ㄌㄩㄝ lǚe			
ㄩㄢ yuan/-üan								ㄌㄩㄢ lǚan			
ㄩㄣ yun/-ün											
ㄩㄥ yong/- iong											

	ㄏ h	ㄐ j	ㄑ q	ㄒ x	ㄓ zh	ㄔ ch	ㄕ sh	ㄖ r	ㄗ z	ㄘ c	ㄙ s
		ㄐㄧㄠ jiao	ㄑㄧㄠ qiao	ㄒㄧㄠ xiao							
		ㄐㄧㄡ jiu	ㄑㄧㄡ qiu	ㄒㄧㄡ xiu							
		ㄐㄧㄢ jian	ㄑㄧㄢ qian	ㄒㄧㄢ xian							
		ㄐㄧㄣ jin	ㄑㄧㄣ qin	ㄒㄧㄣ xin							
		ㄐㄧㄤ jiang	ㄑㄧㄤ qiang	ㄒㄧㄤ xiang							
		ㄐㄧㄥ jing	ㄑㄧㄥ qing	ㄒㄧㄥ xing							
	ㄏㄨ hu				ㄓㄨ zhu	ㄔㄨ chu	ㄕㄨ shu	ㄖㄨ ru	ㄗㄨ zu	ㄘㄨ cu	ㄙㄨ su
	ㄏㄨㄚ hua				ㄓㄨㄚ zhua	ㄔㄨㄚ chua	ㄕㄨㄚ shua				
	ㄏㄨㄛ huo				ㄓㄨㄛ zhuo	ㄔㄨㄛ chuo	ㄕㄨㄛ shuo	ㄖㄨㄛ ruo	ㄗㄨㄛ zuo	ㄘㄨㄛ cuo	ㄙㄨㄛ suo
	ㄏㄨㄞ huai				ㄓㄨㄞ zhuai	ㄔㄨㄞ chuai	ㄕㄨㄞ shuai				
	ㄏㄨㄟ hui				ㄓㄨㄟ zhui	ㄔㄨㄟ chui	ㄕㄨㄟ shui	ㄖㄨㄟ rui	ㄗㄨㄟ zui	ㄘㄨㄟ cui	ㄙㄨㄟ sui
	ㄏㄨㄢ huan				ㄓㄨㄢ zhuan	ㄔㄨㄢ chuan	ㄕㄨㄢ shuan	ㄖㄨㄢ ruan	ㄗㄨㄢ zuan	ㄘㄨㄢ cuan	ㄙㄨㄢ suan
	ㄏㄨㄣ hun				ㄓㄨㄣ zhun	ㄔㄨㄣ chun	ㄕㄨㄣ shun	ㄖㄨㄣ run	ㄗㄨㄣ zun	ㄘㄨㄣ cun	ㄙㄨㄣ sun
	ㄏㄨㄤ huang				ㄓㄨㄤ zhuang	ㄔㄨㄤ chuang	ㄕㄨㄤ shuang				
	ㄏㄨㄥ hong				ㄓㄨㄥ zhong	ㄔㄨㄥ chong		ㄖㄨㄥ rong	ㄗㄨㄥ zong	ㄘㄨㄥ cong	ㄙㄨㄥ song
		ㄐㄩ jǔ	ㄑㄩ qǔ	ㄒㄩ xǔ							
		ㄐㄩㄝ jüe	ㄑㄩㄝ qüe	ㄒㄩㄝ xüe							
		ㄐㄩㄢ jüan	ㄑㄩㄢ qüan	ㄒㄩㄢ xüan							
		ㄐㄩㄣ jün	ㄑㄩㄣ qün	ㄒㄩㄣ xün							
		ㄐㄩㄥ jiong	ㄑㄩㄥ qiong	ㄒㄩㄥ xiong							

串起全球僑胞的心



LINE官方帳號



YouTube頻道



僑務電子報

僑胞卡

Overseas Compatriot Card (OCC)

線上申辦好便利



申辦中文版傳送門



申辦英文版傳送門
Application Online



僑生服務專區



網址：Students.Taiwan-World.Net ， QRcode

臺灣是東西文化交流薈萃之地，具備優質的教育環境與完善的教育制度，為鼓勵全球各地更多優秀僑生來臺升學，培育成為海外僑臺商企業及當地產業所需之技術人才，僑委會除專為僑生辦理大學先修教育外，近年亦加強推廣3+4產學攜手合作僑生專班及海外青年技術訓練班，針對僑生提供完善的在學輔導措施與照護，如新僑生接機、僑生社團補助、工讀金及學習扶助金、獎助學金、醫療急難救助、僑保及健保補助等，讓海外家長放心將小孩送到臺灣讀書及學習。

為提供僑生來臺就學相關資訊，僑委會於官方網站闢建「僑生服務專區」，只要以手機掃描下方QRcode即可瞭解相關就學資訊。

一、海外僑生來臺就學管道

國小



國中、高中、高職、五專



大學及研究所



二、僑生申請來臺就讀3+4產學攜手合作僑生專班

東南亞地區(越南、印尼、馬來西亞、緬甸、泰國、柬埔寨、菲律賓)招生簡章及宣傳摺頁



三、海外僑生申請來臺就讀海外青年技術訓練班 海青班線上招生服務專區



國家圖書館出版品預行編目(CIP)資料

來!學華語. 第三冊, 課本 = Let's learn Mandarin textbook. 3/孫懿芬, 翁玲玲, 張家銘, 石傳德, 黃亭寧編寫. -- 初版. -- 臺北市: 中華民國僑務委員會, 民112.01

面; 公分

ISBN 978-626-7280-01-0(平裝)

1.CST: 漢語 2.CST: 讀本

802.85

112000493

來!學華語 第三冊 課本

編 寫: 孫懿芬、翁玲玲、張家銘、石傳德、黃亭寧
審 查: 曹靜儀

出版機關: 中華民國僑務委員會

地 址: 臺北市徐州路五號十六樓

電 話: (02)2327-2600

網 址: <http://www.ocac.gov.tw>

美編設計: 加斌有限公司

承 印:

定 價: 新臺幣250元

出版年月: 中華民國一一二年一月初版

版(刷)次: 中華民國一一二年一月初版一刷

展 售 處: (提供網路訂購服務)

國家書店松江門市

地址: 台北市松江路209號

電話: 02-2518-0207

網址: www.govbooks.com.tw

五南文化廣場

地址: 台中市中山路6號

電話: 04-2226-0330

網址: www.wunanbooks.com.tw

本會出版教材亦可於電商平臺或其他網路書店購買, 如博客來、PC Home、金石堂、三民書局等, 詳<https://Textbook.Taiwan-World.Net>

本書電子版本及語音檔刊載於全球華文網(www.huayuworld.org)

GPN: 1011200110

ISBN: 978-626-7280-01-0

本會保有本書所有權利, 欲利用本書全部或部分內容者, 需徵求本會書面同意或授權



中華民國僑務委員會

Overseas Community Affairs Council, R.O.C.(Taiwan)

